조선말 배우는 책
Let's learn Korean

외국문도서출판사
Foreign Languages Books Publishing House
1989
PREFACE

International cooperation is developing rapidly between nations today in all fields including politics, the economy, culture and technology. This situation demands that we have some knowledge of the languages concerned.

In particular, foreigners visiting our country want to speak the Korean language and then associate with us in our work and life.

“Let’s learn Korean” has been written to meet such a demand.

In this book all Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters, both literal and normal translations are given and grammatical explanations are presented in a schematic way. Therefore, all readers can read and understand all Korean words, phrases and sentences in this book without any help from other people and learn Korean in an easy way. And not only foreigners staying for a long time in our country, but also those visiting our country for a short time can use it.

“Let’s learn Korean” has been written in the following order.

Pronunciation
Conversation
Grammar
Korean-English Vocabulary
English-Korean Vocabulary

Because this is the first time such a book has been produced, several mistakes may be found in it.

We hope that suggestions for revising this book will be sent to the following address:

Foreign Languages Books Publishing House,
Pyongyang, DPRK

February 1989
The Author
CONTENTS

PRONUNCIATION

- The Korean Alphabet Table ........................................ 10
- Alphabet ...................................................................... 12
- Vowels ....................................................................... 13
- Consonants .................................................................. 16
- Syllables ..................................................................... 22
- The Change of Sounds ............................................... 24
- The Intonation of Sentence ........................................... 31

CONVERSATION

- Greetings .................................................................... 32
- Do You Speak Korean? ................................................ 35
- Entry and Exit ............................................................. 36
- Customs ..................................................................... 37
- Travelling by Air ......................................................... 38
- On the Way to the City from the Airport ...................... 39
- Travelling by Train ....................................................... 41
- At the Hotel ................................................................ 44
- In a Restaurant ........................................................... 47
- At the Post-Office ......................................................... 51
- Money Exchange .......................................................... 53
- At the Hairdresser’s ...................................................... 54
- At the Doctor’s ............................................................. 55
- Human Body ................................................................ 57
- Asking the Way ........................................................... 58
- Notices and Signs ......................................................... 60
- Taxis and Buses ............................................................ 61
- City Sightseeing ........................................................... 62
- Theatre ....................................................................... 65
Photographing ........................................... 66
Shopping ............................................. 67
Numerals .............................................. 70
Money .................................................. 74
Time .................................................... 74
Weather ............................................... 76
Four Seasons ......................................... 77
Months ................................................. 77
Days of the Week ................................. 78

GRAMMAR

Lesson 1:
- Noun ............................................... 78
- Declension of the Noun in the Singular .... 79
- Declension of A Noun in the Plural ......... 89
- Word Order ....................................... 93

Lesson 2:
- Personal Pronoun ............................. 95
- Declension of the Personal Pronoun ...... 98
- Word Order ..................................... 108

Lesson 3:
- Demonstrative Pronoun ................. 109
- Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun 111
- Word Order ..................................... 115

Lesson 4:
- Verb ............................................. 117
- Forms of the Verb .......................... 117
- Final Form of the Verb ................. 120
- Final Ending of the Verb ............... 120
- Adjective ...................................... 124
- Forms of the Adjective .................. 124
- Final Form of the Adjective .......... 127
- Final Ending of the Adjective ....... 128
Lesson 5:
- Declarative Final Endings of the Verb .................................. 137
- Declarative Final Endings of the Adjective ............................. 141
- Declarative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .................................. 143
- Word Order ............................................................................ 145

Lesson 6:
- Interrogative Pronoun ............................................................ 147
- Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun ................................. 151
- Interrogative Final Endings of the Verb ................................ 151
- Interrogative Final Endings of the Adjective ........................... 153
- Interrogative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .................................. 156
- Word Order ............................................................................ 158

Lesson 7:
- Numerals .................................................................................. 162
- Counting Word .............................................................. 166
- Incomplete Noun .............................................................. 168
- Suggestive Final Endings of the Verb ................................... 170
- Imperative Final Endings of the Verb ................................... 172
- Word Order ............................................................................ 173

Lesson 8:
- Adverb ..................................................................................... 175
- Connecting Form of the Verb, Adjective or Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .................................. 178
- Word Order ............................................................................ 194
Lesson 9:
- Pre-Noun ........................................ 200
- Interjection .................................... 202
- Attributive Form of the Verb .................. 202
- Attributive Form of the Adjective ............ 206
- Attributive Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral .................. 208
- Form of the Adverbial Modifier of the Verb or Adjective .............................. 211
- Word Order ..................................... 213

Lesson 10:
- Tenses .......................................... 216
- Respect and Courtesy .......................... 223
- Word Order ..................................... 228

Lesson 11:
- Voice ........................................... 230
- Exchanging Endings ............................ 237

Lesson 12:
- Auxiliary Endings ............................. 242
- Endings Which Are Used as Case Endings .... 248

Lesson 13:
- Stem and Ending ............................... 251
- Attaching of Endings .......................... 254
- Pairs of Endings ............................... 254
- Link-Vowel .................................... 256
- Vocal Harmony ................................. 258
- Exchange of Sounds ............................ 260

Lesson 14:
- Parts of the Sentence ......................... 266
- Predicate ...................................... 269
- Subject ........................................ 276
- Object ........................................ 279
- Quotation ...................................... 283
Adverbial Modifier ........................................ 286
Attribute ................................................. 289
Form of Address ........................................... 292
Parenthesis ............................................... 293
Exclamatory Word ....................................... 295
Conjunctive ............................................... 296
Appended Modifier ....................................... 298
Expanded Part of Sentence ............................ 299

Lesson 15:
- Agreement of Parts of Sentence ..................... 303
- Order of Parts of Sentence ........................... 309

Lesson 16:
- Kinds of Sentences .................................... 320
- Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences .......... 339
- Simple Sentence ....................................... 339
- Compound Sentence and Complex Sentence .......... 340
- Order of the Principal Clause and the Subordinate Clause ......................................................... 342
- Direct Speech ......................................... 342
- Order of the Original Speaker’s Words in Direct Speech ......................................................... 343
- Indirect Speech ........................................ 345
- Changing of Direct Speech into Indirect Speech 345

Tables of Endings ........................................ 350
Subject Index ............................................. 362

KOREAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY ..................... 373
ENGLISH-KOREAN VOCABULARY ..................... 411
Guide for the User

1. All Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters.

   for example:
   ○ 주체사상  
     [chuchesasang]
     Juche Idea
   ○ 안녕하십니까?  
     [annyonghasimigga]
     Hello!
     Good morning.
     Good evening.
   ○ 조선의 진달래 
     [chosonui chindallae]
     Korean azalea
   ○ 고맙습니다.  
     [komapsumnidu]
     Thank you.

2. In transcript the separation is denoted by a point (·).

   for example:  
   저는 평양으로 갑니다.  
   [chonun pyongyang uro kamnida]  |  I go to Pyongyang.
   I          go

3. Both literal and free translations are given for all Korean sentences.

   for example:  
   저는 영국 사람입니다.  
   [chonun yong guksaramimin da]  |  I am an Englishman.  
   (free translation)  
   I an Englishman am (literal translation)

4. The asterisk in the example is related to that in the explanation.

   for example:  
   나의 * 어머니  
   [nau i omoni]
   my mother
explanation:
* 나는의 (나—personal pronoun 의—genitive ending of the personal pronoun)

5. Grammatical explanations are given as follows:
안녕히 가십시오.* Good-bye (free translation)
[annyong-i kasipsio] well go! (literal translation)

explanation:
* 가다 [ka da] go

stem ending
가시오 (시오—most deferential imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

6. The number on the left of the page is found in the subject index.
# PRONUNCIATION

## THE KOREAN ALPHABET TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th>[a] [ya] [o] [yo] [u] [yu] [i]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>가 가 거 거 고 교 구 구 그 기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[ka] [kya] [ko] [kyo] [ku] [kyu] [ki]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>나 냐 네 노 노 누 냐 늘 냐 니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[na] [nya] [no] [nyo] [nu] [nyu] [ni]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>다 라 더 더 되 도 두 드 두 디</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[ta] [tya] [to] [tyo] [tu] [tyu] [ti]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>라 띠 려 력 렬 려 러 랴 렬 려 릴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[ra] [rya] [ro] [ryo] [ru] [ryu] [ri]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>마 마 머 머 모 모 뮤 뮤 모 모</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[ma] [mya] [mo] [myo] [mu] [myu] [mi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>바 바 벌 보 보 부 브 비</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[pa] [pya] [po] [pyo] [pu] [pyu] [pi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>사 사 사 서 서 소 소 수 수 스 스 시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[sa] [sya] [so] [syo] [su] [syu] [si]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*발성: *

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th>[a] [ya] [o] [yo] [u] [yu] [i]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>아 야 여 여 오 우 우 음 음 이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🆕️</td>
<td>[a] [ya] [o] [yo] [u] [yu] [i]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 한글 (ch) | 자 자 저 저 조 조 주 주 주 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조 조조
## ALPHABET

2 The Korean alphabet has 40 letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>letter</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>transcription</th>
<th>letter</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>transcription</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>kiuk</td>
<td>k, g</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ</td>
<td>niun</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ㅑ</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄷ</td>
<td>tiut</td>
<td>t, d</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄸ</td>
<td>riul</td>
<td>r(1)</td>
<td>ㅛ</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ</td>
<td>mium</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>piup</td>
<td>p, b</td>
<td>ㅠ</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>yu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>siut</td>
<td>s, t</td>
<td>ㅡ</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅇ</td>
<td>iung</td>
<td>ng</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>chiut</td>
<td>ch, j, t</td>
<td>ㅎ</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅊ</td>
<td>kiuk</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>yae</td>
<td>yae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>tiut</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ㅐ</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>piup</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>ㅔ</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ</td>
<td>hiuh</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td>oe</td>
<td>oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅎ</td>
<td>toengiuk</td>
<td>gg, k</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>toenbiup</td>
<td>bb</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>ui</td>
<td>ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>tensiut</td>
<td>ss, t</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>toenjiut</td>
<td>jj</td>
<td>ㅐ</td>
<td>wae</td>
<td>wae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12
3 The Korean language has 21 vowels:

ㅏ, ㅓ, ㅗ, ㅏ, ㅓ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅚ, ㅟ, ㅣ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅛ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ

The vowels are divided into simple vowels and diphthongs.

4 1. The simple vowels

The simple vowels are those for which the shape of the oral cavity does not change in pronunciation.

There are 10 simple vowels:
ㅏ, ㅓ, ㅗ, ㅏ, ㅓ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅚ, ㅟ

5 2. The diphthongs

The diphthongs are those vowels for which the shape of the oral cavity changes in pronunciation and two vowels become one.

There are 11 diphthongs:
ㅏ, ㅓ, ㅗ, ㅜ, ㅓ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅚ, ㅟ

6 The vowels are pronounced as follows:

1. ㅏ is pronounced [a] as in car and transcribed as ⟨a⟩.
   For example:
   아 [a] ah

2. ㅗ is pronounced [o] as in ago and transcribed as ⟨o⟩.
   For example:
   아리 [omoni] mother

3. ㅗ is pronounced [o] as in on and transcribed as ⟨o⟩.
   For example:
   오 [o] oh
4. \( T \) is pronounced [u] as in *good* and transcribed as 〈u〉.  
   for example:  
   우리 [uri] we

5.  is almost a groaning sound in the chest and is pronounced between [u] in *good* and [i] in *window* and transcribed as 〈u〉.  
   for example:  
   그 [ku] he

6.  is pronounced [i] as in *it* and transcribed as 〈i〉.  
   for example:  
   아이 [ai] child

7.  is pronounced [æ] as in *man* and transcribed as 〈æ〉.  
   for example:  
   애 [æ] child

8.  is pronounced [e] as in *bed* and transcribed as 〈e〉.  
   for example:  
   네 [ne] you; your; yes

9.  is pronounced [oe] as in *Goethe* and transcribed as 〈oe〉.  
   for example:  
   소 [soe] iron

10.  is pronounced [wi] as in *window* and transcribed as 〈wi〉.  
    for example:  
    위 [wi] stomach

11.  is pronounced [ja] as in *yard* and transcribed as 〈ya〉.  
    for example:  
    약 [yak] medicine

12.  is pronounced [jo] as in *you* [jɔ] and transcribed as 〈yo〉.  
    for example:  
    여기 [yogi] here
13. ㅂ is pronounced [jɔ] as in yɔrk and transcribed as ⟨yo⟩.
   for example:
   교실 [kyosil] classroom
14. ㅠ is pronounced [ju] as in you and transcribed as ⟨yu⟩.
   for example:
   유리 [yuri] glass
15. aphore [je] as in yes and transcribed as ⟨yae⟩.
   for example:
   아예 [yae] hullo (call to a child or between children)
16. ㅗ is pronounced [je] as in yellow and transcribed as ⟨ye⟩.
   for example:
   의사 [uisa] doctor
17. ㅏ [ui] is pronounced quickly but as a diphthong and transcribed as ⟨ui⟩.
   for example:
   왈 [wa]  and
18. ㅐ is pronounced [wa] as in guaiacum and transcribed as ⟨wa⟩.
   for example:
   원 [won] circle; won (unit of Korean currency)
19. ㅔ is pronounced [we] as in wax and transcribed as ⟨we⟩.
   for example:
   왜 [wae] why
21. ㅔ is pronounced almost like [we] in wet and transcribed as ⟨we⟩.
   for example:
   웨 [wen] what
Individual vowels are pronounced separately, for example:
아세아 [asea] Asia

7 The vowels are written as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
1 & = 1^{1}2 & 1^{12}2 & 1^{1}2 & 1^{1}2 \\
& & 1^{1}2 & & \\
\frac{1}{2} & & 1^{1}2 & & 1^{1}2 \\
1^{1}3 & & 1^{1}2 & & 1^{1}2 \\
1^{1}3 & & 1^{1}2 & & 1^{1}2 \\
1^{1}3 & & 1^{1}2 & & 1^{1}2 \\
1^{1}3 & & 1^{1}2 & & 1^{1}2 \\

\end{align*}
\]

CONSONANTS

8 The Korean language has 19 consonants:
ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅎ, ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ, ㅉ

9 The consonants are pronounced as follows:

1. ㄱ is pronounced a little harder than [g].
   for example:
   고 [ku] he

2. ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   조국 [choguk] fatherland
3) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.
   for example:
   극장 [kukjang] theatre

4) ㄱ is transcribed as [g] before a vowel.
   for example:
   고기 [kogi] meat

2. ㄲ is pronounced [k] as in the French conte.
1) ㄲ is transcribed as [gg] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   꽁다발 [ggotdabal] bouquet

2) ㄲ is transcribed as [gg] before a vowel.
   for example:
   도끼 [togi] axe

3) ㄲ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   밖 [pak] outside

4) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.
   for example:
   묶다 [mukda] bind

3. ㅋ is pronounced [k] as in cold. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㄱ [k].
   ㅋ is transcribed as [k].
   for example:
   코 [ko] nose

4. ㅂ is pronounced a little harder than [b].
1) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   비 [pi] rain

2) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   밥 [pap] boiled rice

3) ㅂ is transcribed as [p] before another consonant.
for example:

4) 입 [kopda] beautiful

for example:

입으로 [chiburo] to home

5. 입 is pronounced [p] as in the French pincette.

입 is transcribed as ⟨bb⟩.

for example:

빵 [bbang] bread

6. 입 is pronounced [p] as in park. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced 입 [b].

입 is transcribed as [p].

for example:

○ 쓰 [pen] pen
○ 우표 [upyo] postage stamp
○ 잎 [ip] leaf
○ 높다 [nopda] high

7. 입 is pronounced a little harder than [d].

1) 입 is transcribed as [t] at the beginning of a word.

for example:

다리 [tari] leg; bridge

2) 입 is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example:

들 [tiut] (the consonant 입)

3) 입 is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example:

묻다 [mutda] ask

4) 입 is transcribed as [d] before a vowel.

for example:

도마도 [tomado] tomato

8. 입 is pronounced [t] as in the Spanish tobacco.

입 is transcribed as ⟨dd⟩.

for example:
9. ㄷ is pronounced [t] as in tank. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㄷ [t].
   ㄷ is transcribed as ⟨t⟩.
   for example:
   [turongku] trunk
   [bongtu] envelope
   [bat] field
   [katda] equal

10. ㅈ is pronounced [z] as in zero.
    1) ㅈ is transcribed as [ʃ] at the beginning of a word.
       for example:
       [choson] Korea
    2) ㅈ is transcribed as [ʃ] before a vowel.
       for example:
       [aboji] father
    3) ㅈ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
       for example:
       [nat] day
    4) ㅈ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
       for example:
       [nutda] late

11. ㅊ is pronounced [ʦ] as in tzar and transcribed as ⟨jj⟩.
    for example:
    [tongjok] east

12. ㅈ is pronounced [ʧ] as in child. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㅈ [ch].
    1) ㅈ is transcribed as [ʃ] at the beginning of a word.
       for example:
       [chum] dance
    2) ㅈ is transcribed as [ʃ] before a vowel.
       for example:
       [chadongcha] auto
3) 꾹 is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   꽃 [ggot] flower
4) 꾹 is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   꽃방 [ggotbang] florist’s shop
13. ㅅ is pronounced [s] as in song.
1) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   수도 [sudo] capital
2) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] before a vowel.
   for example:
   도시 [tosi] city
3) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   옷 [ot] clothes
4) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   웃다 [utda] laugh
14. ㅆ is pronounced [ss] as in the French sans.
1) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   쌀 [ssal] rice
2) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] before a vowel.
   for example:
   날씨 [nalssi] weather
3) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   겪 [ket] (the ending of the future tense)
4) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   있다 [itda] there is
15. ㄴ is pronounced [n] as in pen.
ㅂ is transcribed as [n].
for example:
○ 나 [na] I
○ 조선 [choson] Korea

16. ㅁ is pronounced [m] as in man.
   for example:
   ○ 어머니 [omon] mother
   ○ 사라 [saram] man

17. ㄹ

   〈r〉 and 〈l〉 are denoted in Korean by the same letter ㄹ.
   The following rules are applied to this double pronunciation:

1) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   라지오 [rajio] radio

2) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] before a vowel.
   for example:
   우리 [uri] we

3) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   물 [mul] water

4) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] before another consonant.
   for example:
   바다 [paldal] sea

5) When ㄴ and ㄹ come together, then ㄴㄹ is always transcribed as [l].
   for example:
   천리 [choll] thousand ㏀ (ri is a Korean unit of distance.)

18. ㅎ is pronounced [h] as in hat and transcribed as 〈h〉.
for example:

하나 [hana] one

19. ơ is pronounced [ŋ] as in song. But at the beginning
    of a syllable Ơ is not pronounced.

for example:

강 [kang] river

The consonants are written as follows:

SYLLABLES

11 A word consists of one or more syllables. A syllable
    consists of one or more consonants and one vowel.

The syllables are divided into 5 forms:
1. The one-vowel syllable
   for example:
   아이 [ai] child

   *explanation:*
   The syllable 아 consists of the consonant ㅇ and the vowel ㅏ.
   The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.
   Therefore, the syllable 아 is considered a one-vowel syllable.
   The syllable 오 consists of the consonant ㅗ and the vowel ㅗ.
   The consonant ㅗ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.
   Therefore, the syllable 오 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

2. The one-consonant-and-one-vowel syllable
   for example:
   나무 [namu] tree; wood

   *explanation:*
   The syllable 나 consists of the consonant ㄴ and the vowel ㅏ.
   The syllable 무 consists of the consonant ㅁ and the vowel ㅗ.

3. The one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable
   for example:
   일 [il] work

   *explanation:*
   The syllable 일 consists of the consonant ㄲ, the vowel ㅏ, and the consonant ㄲ.
   The consonant ㄲ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.
   Therefore, the syllable 일 is considered a one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable.

4. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and one consonant
   for example:
   물 [mul] water

   *explanation:*
   The syllable 물 consists of the consonant ㅁ, the vowel ㅜ, and the consonant ㄹ.

5. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and a double consonant
for example:

객 [kap] price

explanation:
The syllable 객 consists of the consonant ᵇ, the vowel ᵇ and
the double consonant ᶑ.

THE CHANGE OF SOUNDS

12 Sounds change in six different ways.

1. The assimilation of sound

The assimilation of sound means that a sound in a word
is pronounced, under the influence of its foregoing or fol-
lowing sound, same as or alike to its foregoing or follow-
ing sound.

There are 3 assimilations of sound:

1) The assimilation of sonants ᵇ [n], ᶑ [m], ᶑ [r]
(1) The sounds ᵇ [k], ᶑ [gg] and ᶑ [k] are pronounced ᶑ
[ng] before a sonant.
for example:

○ 독립 [tokrip] independence

[동립] [tongrip] (as a result of the assimilation of
the sonant ᶑ [r])

○ 탕년다 [taknunda] polish

[당년다] [tangnunda] (as a result of the assimilation
of the sonant ᵇ [n])

○ 부엌문 [puokmun] kitchen door

[부엌문] [pungmun] (as a result of the assimilation
of the sonant ᶑ [m])

(2) The sound ᶑ [p] and ᶑ [p] are pronounced ᶑ [m] be-
fore a sonant.
for example:

○ 법령 [popryong] law

[법령] [popryong] (as a result of the assimilation
of the sonant ᶑ [r])
The sounds ㄷ[t], ㄹ[r], ㅅ[ch], ㅆ[ch], ㅅ[s] and ㅅ[ss] are pronounced ㄴ[n] before a sonant.

For example:

- 만두이 [matnui] the eldest sister
  [만두이 ][mannui](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ[m])

- 발머리 [patmori] edge of a field
  [발머리 ][panmori](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ[m])

- 젤먹이 [chotmogi] suckling
  [점먹이 ][chommogi](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ[m])

- 꽃망울 [ggotmang-ul] flower bud
  [곤망울 ][ggonmang-ul](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ[n])

- 잡나무 [chatnamu] pine-nut tree
  [자나무 ][channamu] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ[n])

- 있느냐 [itunyia] is there?
  [있느냐 ][innunya] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ[n])

2) The assimilation of the sound ㄹ[l]

1) The sound ㄴ[n] is pronounced ㄹ[l] before the sound ㄹ[l].

For example:
- 단련 [tanlyon] training
  [단련 ][talyon](as a result of the assimilation of the sound ㄹ[l])

2) The sound ㄴ[n] is pronounced ㄹ[l] after the sound ㄹ[l].
for example:
설날 [solnal] New Year's Day
[설날] [sollal] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound 꼿 [l])

3) The assimilation of the palatal
(1) The sound 꼿 [t] is pronounced 꾰 [j] before the palatal 꼿 [i].
for example:
해돋이 [haetoti] sunrise
[해도지] [haetoji] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal 꾰 [i])

(2) The sound 꾰 [t] is pronounced 꾰 [ch] before the palatal 꾰 [i].
for example:
한결같이 [hangyolgati] unanimously
[한결가치] [hangyolgachi] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal 꾰 [i])

2. The shut consonants
When a consonant lies at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound, it is pronounced as shut.

1) The sounds 꾰 [k] and 꾰 [gg] are pronounced as a shut 꾰 [k] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.
for example:
○ 부엌 [puok] kitchen
[부엌] [puok] (at the end of the word)
○ 깍다 [ggadga] pare; shear; shave
[깍다] [ggadga] (before the voiceless sound 꾰) (refer to 12-3.)

2) The sounds 꾰 [t], 꾰 [j], 꾰 [ch], 꾰 [s] and 꾰 [ss] are pronounced as a shut 꾰 [t] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.
for example:
○ 밭 [pat] field
[밭] [pat] (at the end of the word)
3) The sound 꼭 [p] is pronounced as a shut 꼭 [p] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound, for example:

3. The strengthening of a sound
The strengthening of a sound means that a soft sound becomes a strong sound under the influence of the consonant which comes before it.

But the strong sounds are transcribed as follows:
- gg → g
dd → d
bb → b
ss → s
jj → j

for example:
빛갈 [bitggal] → [bitgal] colour
집단 [chipddan] → [chipdan] group
늪봄 [nutbbom] → [nutbom] late spring
봄바람 [pombbaram] → [pombaram] spring breeze
있소 [itsso] → [itso] there is
극장 [kukjang] → [kukjang] theatre

1) A soft sound becomes a strong sound after a consonant which is not sonant.
for example:

첩단 [chipdan] collective

[첩단] [chipddan] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ◊ [d] after the voiceless sound ◊ [p])

But [첩단] [chipddan] is transcribed as [chipdan].

2) After a sonant a soft sound becomes as follows:

(1) a strong sound

for example:

봄바람 [pombaram] spring breeze

[봄바람] [pombbaram] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ◊ [b] after the sonant ◊ [m])

But [봄바람] [pombbaram] is transcribed as [pombaram].

(2) not a strong sound

for example:

충성 [chungsong] loyalty

explanation:

The soft sound ◊ [s] does not become a strong sound after sonant ◊ [ng].

4. The insertion of a sound

The insertion of a sound means that a sound is inserted when a word is pronounced.

There are 2 methods of insertion:

1) The consonant ◊ [n] is inserted.

for example:

부엌일 [puokil] kitchen work

[부엌님] [puoknil] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ◊ [n])

[부엌님] [puongnil] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ◊ [n])

2) The consonant ◊ [t] is inserted.

for example:

기발 [kibal] flag

[길발] [kitbal] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ◊ [t])
5. The omission of a sound

The omission of a sound means that a certain sound is omitted when sounds are linked. There are 2 methods of omission:

1) The sound [h] of a stem is not pronounced before an ending or a suffix which begins with a vowel, for example:

- 달랐다 [manhatda] (as a result of the omission of the sound [h] before the past tense ending 옳 [at] (refer to 166) which begins with the vowel [a])
- [마난따] [manatda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound [i] [d])

2) The penultimate or the last consonant in a syllable is omitted.

(1) The penultimate consonant [l] in a syllable is omitted when the penultimate and last consonants [lk] or [lm], [rp] [lp] or [rp] in a syllable come before another consonant or at the end of a word, for example:

- 달 [talk] hen
  [탈] [tak] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant [l])
- 살 [salmda] cook
  [삼다] [samda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound [d])
○ 발다 [papda] tred
   [발다] [papda] (as a result of the omission of the
penultimate consonant 룹 [l])
[발다] [papda] (as a result of the strengthening of the
sound ㅌ [d])

○ 읽다 [ulpda] recite
   [읽다] [ulpda] (as a result of the omission of the penul-
timate consonant 룹 [l])
[읽다] [ulpda] (as a result of the strengthening of the
sound ㅌ [d])

(2) The last consonant in a syllable is omitted when it
is a lingual.
   for example:
   엽다 [opnda] there is no
As the last consonant 룹 [t] is a lingual, it is omitted.
[엽다] [opda] (as a result of the omission of the last
consonant 룹 [t])
[엽다] [opda] (as a result of the strengthening of the
sound ㅌ [d])

6. The contraction of sounds
   The contraction of sounds means that some sounds stan-
ding side by side contract into one sound.
   There are 2 methods of contraction:
   1) Sounds contract into a strong sound.
      A soft sound and the sound ㅎ [h] following it contract
      into a strong sound.
      for example:
      역할 [yokhah] role
      [역할] [yokha] (as a result of the contraction of the
sounds ㄱ [k] and ㅎ [h])
   2) Two vowels contract into a new vowel.
      for example:
      아이 [ai] child
\[ \text{[ae]} \text{ child (as a result of the contraction of the vowels \text{[a]} and \text{[i]})} \]

**THE INTONATION OF SENTENCE**

13 The kinds of sentences are indicated by whether the tone is rising or falling at the end of a sentence.

1. The falling tone is used at the end of a declarative sentence.

   for example:
   
   
   가 아 \[\text{ongda}\]  
   he is coming

2. The rising tone is used at the end of an interrogative sentence.

   for example:
   
   가 아 \[\text{ong-ga}\]  
   Is he coming?

But the interrogative word should be stressed when it appears in an interrogative sentence.

   for example:
   
   가 아 \[\text{ong-ga}\]  
   When is he coming?

3. The tone should be even to the end of a suggestive sentence.

   for example:
   
   가 아! \[\text{kaja}\] Let us go!

4. The falling tone is used at the end of an imperative sentence.

   for example:
   
   가 아! \[\text{kara}\] Go!
5. The tone should be even to the end of an exclamatory sentence.

Oh! Fatherland!

for example:

오, 조국이여!
[chogugyo]

oh! fatherland

CONVERSATION

안녕하세요?
[annyonghasimnigga]
How?

어떻게 지내시니가?
[oddoke chinaesimnigga]
You also healthy?

당신도 건강할 난가?
[tangsindo kon·ganghamnida]
I very healthy

고마워요, 아주 건강합니다.
[komapsumnida aju kon·ganghamnida]
Thank you very healthy

처음 뵐 습니다.
[choum poepsumnida]
First time see

어서 들어오십시오.
[oso turoosipsio]
Please come in

어서 장으십시오.
[oso anjusipsio]
Please sit down

Greetings

Hello!

Good morning.

Good evening.

How are you?

Very well, and you?

Thank you, I am very well.

How do you do?

Come in, please!

Take your seat, please.
감사합니다. [maeu komapsumnida] Thank you very much.

잠깐만 [chamganman kidaryojusipsio] Wait a minute please.

당신은 누구십니까? [dangsinun nuguşimnigga] Who are you?

당신의 이름은 무엇입니까? [tangsinun irlumun muosimnigga] May I have your name, please?

저는 ... 이라고 부릅니다. [chonun ... irago purumnida] My name is ... .

저는 영국에서 왔습니다. [chonun yong · gueso watsumnida] Where are you from?

나는 영국 사람입니다. [nanun yong · guksaramimnida] I am from England.

저는 영어를 아십니까? [tangsinun yong · orul asimnigga] Do you speak English?

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다. [nanun yong · orul chal motamnida] I have a poor command of English.

예. [ye] Yes.

아니요. [aniyo] No.

 좋습니다. [chosumnida] All right.
나요니다.  
[nabbumnida] 
bad

기꺼이. 
[kiggoi] 
with pleasure

미안합니다. 
[mianhannida] 
excuse me

선생.  
[sonsaeng] 
teacher

어서.  
[oso] 
please

대단히 고맙습니다.  
[taedani komapsumnida] 
very thank

친만에.  
[chonmane] 
you are welcome

다시 만납시다.  
[tasi mannapsida] 
again meet

안녕하세요.  
[annyong-i] 
well

가시요.  
[kasipsio] 
go!

안녕하세요.  
[annyong-i] 
well

계십시오.  
[kyesipsio] 
be!

안녕하세요.  
[annyong-i] 
well

주무시요.  
[chumusipsio] 
sleep!

Bad.

With pleasure.

Excuse me.

Mr.

Please!

Thank you very much.

You are welcome.

See you again!

Good-bye.

Good-bye.

Good night.
당신은 조선말을 아십니까?  Do you speak Korean?
[tangsinun chosonmarul asimnigga]

당신은 영어를 아십니까?  Do you speak English?
you English know?
[tangsinnun yong-orul asimnigga]

나는 조선말을 아닙니다.  I speak Korean.
I Korean know
[nanun chosonmarul amnida]

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.  I have a poor command of
I English good not speak
[chouei marul asigetsumnigga]

저의 말을 아시겠습니까?  Do you understand me?
my word understand?

나는 당신의 말을 다  I understand everything
알아들습니다. quite well.
[tanun tangsinui marul ta
understand
[aradusmnida]

다 아직들지 못합니다.  I can’t understand every-
all understand not can
[ta ararutji motamnida]

말해주십시오.  I beg your pardon!
speak
[malhajusipsio]

 좀 더 천천히 말해주십시오.  Speak more slowly, please!
a little more slowly speak
[chomdo chonchoni malhajusipsio]
입국 및 출국 [ipguksusok]
entry formalities

나는 관광객입니다. [nanun kwan·gwang·gaegimnida] I am a tourist.

손잡은 어디서 찾을수 [son]imun odiso chajulsu the luggage where can
get?

이것이 나의 짐표입니다. [igosi naui chimpyoimnida] this my luggage tag is

나는 평양으로 직행합니다. [nanun pyongyang·uro chikaenghamnida] I'm going to Pyongyang directly.

ENTRY and Exit

Where can I collect back my luggage?

Here is my luggage tag.

I'm going to Pyongyang directly.

입국 [ipguk] entry
출국 [chulguk] exit
차류 [changryuk] landing
입국표 [ipgukpyo] disembarkation
출국표 [chulgukpyo] embarkation
려권 [ryoggwon] passport
사증 [sajjung] visa
려권경찰 [ryoggwon·gomyol] inspection of passports
성 [song] family name
이름 [irum] name

날 날 [nannal] date of birth
난곳 [nangot] birth-place
성별 [songbyol] sex
남자 [namja] male
여자 [nyoja] female
나이 [nai] age
직업 [chigop] occupation
주소 [chuso] address
민족별 [minjokbyol] nationality
국적 [kukjok] nationality, citizenship
세관 [segwan]

나에게는 신고수속해야 할 항문은 없습니다.
[na egenun sin gosusokeya hal with me to declare mulgonun opsumnida]

이것은 모두 나의 개인용품입니다.
[igosun modu naui kaeinyongpumimnida] this all my article for personal is

이것은 동무에게 줄 선물입니다.
[igosun tongmuege chul sonmurimnida] this a friend to to give a gift is

이것은 영국으로 가기로 가는
[igosun yong guguro kajigoganun this England to taking kinyompumimnida] a souvenir is

나에게는 귀중품은 없습니다.
[na egenun kwijungpumun opsumnida] me jewelry isn't

인삼술 2병 있습니다.
[insamsul tubyong itsumnida] Insam (ginseng) wine 2 bottles are

나에게는 300파운드 있습니다.
[na egenun sambaek paundu itsumnida] me 300 pound is

이 카메라는 나의
[i sajin ginun naui this camera my kaeinyongpumimnida] for personal use article is

Customs

I have nothing to declare.

These are all my personal belongings.

This is a gift for a friend.

This is a souvenir I'm taking to England.

I have no jewelry.

I have 2 bottles of Insam (ginseng) wine.

I have 300 pounds.

This camera is for my personal use.
비행기 라행 [pihaeng · giryohaeng]
당신은 오전 10시에 비행장에 나가야 합니다.
[taŋsinun ojoŋ yolsie pihaeŋjang · e nagaya hamnida]
you morning 10 o’clock at the airport to go must

어느 비행장에서?
[onu bihaengjang · eso]
which airport from
비행기를 탑니까?
[pihaeng · giriul tamnigga]
the airplane get on?

나의 짐을 가져다주십시오.
kajyodachusipsio
my baggage the counter till take

표파는 곳이 어디 입니까?
[pyparanun · gosí odiimnigga]
the booking-office which place is?

런던까지 가는 표
[londonggaji kanun pyo]
London till going ticket

두장을 주십시오.
tujang · ul chusipsio
two sheets give

런던에 언제 도착합니까?
[londone onje tochakannigga]
London at when land?

2 호 출구는 어디 입니까?
[ihochulgunun odiimnigga]
2 number gate which place is?

나에게 짐이 세 (3) 짝있습니 다.
[na · ge chimi sejjakitsumnida]
me baggage three pieces are

Travelling by Air

You must be at the airport at 10 o’clock in the morning.

From which airport do we leave?

Take my baggage to the counter.

Where is the booking-office?

Two tickets to London, please!

When do we land at London?

Where is Gate 2?

I have three pieces of baggage.
What is the excess baggage charge?

책 임비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa] captain
점대원 [chopdaewon] steward
너자점대원 [nyojajopdaewon] stewardess
담배 피 우지 말것! [tambaepiujimal got] NO SMOKING!
너자좌장실 [nyojahwajangsil] LADIES
남자좌장실 [namjahwajangsil] GENTLEMEN
사용중 [sayongjung] OCCUPIED
비어있음 [piyoissum] VACANT
출발 [chulbal] departure
도착 [tochak] arrival
리오 [riyuk] take-off
착륙 [changryuk] landing
여객의 승차 [ryogaeguisungcha] embarkationiffe
시간차이 [siganchai] time diff.
통과사증 [tong·gwasaajung] transit visa

On the Way to the City from the Airport

Where is the tourist information office?
좋은 렌관을 소개해줄수
[choun ryogwanul sogaehaejulsu] recommend

없겠습니까?
opgetsumnigga] cannot?

미안하지만 잡나르는 사람을
[mianhajiman chimnarunun saramul] please a porter

불러주십시오.
pullojusipso] call!

이 짐을 택시까지
[i chimul taeksiggaji] this luggage to taxi

가져다주십시오.
kajyodajusipso] take!

나를 창광산려관까지
[narul changgwangsanryogwan:ggaji] me the Changgwangsan Hotel to

떼려다주십시오.
deryodajusipso] take!

운전수 [unjonsu] driver

비행 번호 [ryoggwonbonho] passport number

사증 번호 [sajjunbangho] visa number

여행 목지 [ryohaengmokjok] purpose of journey

Can you recommend a good hotel?

Please get me a porter!

Take this luggage to the taxi, please!

Take me to the Chang-gwangsan Hotel!
기차려행 [kicharyohaeng]

평양에 가십니까?
[pyongyang-e kasimnigga]
Pyongyang to go

예, 평양에 갑니다.
yes Pyonyang to go

언제 떠나실니까?
onje ddonasimnigga
when start?

레일 아침에 떠날니다.
rail achime ddonamnida
tomorrow morning start

정거장까지 얼마나
[chong'gojang-ggaji olmana
station to how much

걸립니까?
kollimnigga
take?

15분에 갑니다.
sibobune kamnida
15 minutes in go

자, 정거장에 왔습니다.
[cha chon'gojang-e watsumnida]
now the station to have come

차표를 사십시오.
[chapyorul sapisio]
ticket buy!

사켓습니다.
sagetsumnida
will buy

Travelling by Train

Are you going to Pyongyang?

Yes, I am going to Pyongyang.

When will you start?

I shall start tomorrow morning.

How long does it take to the station?

We shall be there in a quarter of an hour.

Here we are at the station.

Get your ticket!

Let me have a first-class ticket.
평양까지 가는 1등차표
(Pyongyang to going first-class ticket)
한장울 주십시오!
(one sheet give!)
시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
the time how much necessary is?
것은 급행열차입니까?
it an express is?
이 열차에 침대칸이
this train in a sleeping compartment
입니까?
is?
여기서 담배를 피울 수
(here cigarette smoke)
입니까?
is?
어느 플랫폼에서 기차가
which platform from
떠남니까?
(leave?)

Give me a first-class one way ticket to Pyongyang!
How long does it take to get to Pyongyang?
Does this train have a sleeping compartment?
May I smoke here?
From which platform does the train leave?
어서 타십시오.
[oso tasipsio]
please get in

지차가 곧 멈춥니다.
[kichaga kot ddonamnida]
the train instantly start

차, 멈춥니다.
[cha ddonamnida]
now started

여기는 어느 정거장 입니까?
[yoginun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
this place which station is?

여기는 함흥역입니다.
[yoginun hamhung·yogimnida]
this place Hamhung Station is

여기서 얼마나 동안 멈춥니까?
[yogiso olmatong·an motsumnigga]
here how long stops?

다음은 어느 정거장 입니까?
[taumun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
the next which station is?

1 시간이면 평양에
[hansiganimyon pyongyang·e
an hour's time in Pyongyang at

도착합니다.
[tochakamnida]
arrive

평양에 도착하게 되면
[pyongyang·e tochakage toemyon
Pyongyang at when reach

알려주십시오.
[allyojusipsio]
let me know

차, 평양에왔습니다.
[cha pyongyang·e watsumnida]
now Pyongyang to have come

어서 내리십시오!
[oso naerisipsio]
please get off!

Get in, please!

The train’s about to start.

Now we’re off.

What station is this?

This is Hamhung Station.

How long does the train stop here?

What is the next station?

We’ll be in Pyongyang in an hour.

Please let me know when we reach Pyongyang.

Here we are in Pyongyang.

Get off, please!
어느 레관으로 가십니까?
[onu ryogwanuro kasimnigga]
what hotel to go?

평양레관으로 갑니다.
[pyongyangrjogwanuro kamnida]
Pyongyang Hotel to go

차, 평양 레관에 왔습니까?
[cha pyongyangryogwane watsumnida]
now Pyongyang Hotel to have oome
빈 방이 있습니까?
[pin pang'i itsumnigga]
vacant room is there?

저의 이름은 ... 입니다.
[choui irumun ... imnida]
my name ... is

레관에 여기 있습니다.
[ryoggwoni yogi itsumnida]
passport here is

우리는 4 명입니다.
[urinnun nemyong-imnida]
we four persons are

나가는곳 [naganun'got ] exit
들어가는곳 [tuorganun'got] entrance
플래트홈 [pullaetuhom] platform
철길[cholgil] railway
객차[ryogaekcha] passenger train
낮차[natcha] day train
밤차[pamcha] night train
전기차[chon'gicha] electric train
장 [chajang] conductor.
침대칸 [chimdaekan] compartment

At the Hotel

What hotel are you going to?

I am going to the Pyongyang Hotel.

Here we are (at the Pyongyang Hotel).

Have you any vacant rooms?

My name is...

Here is my passport.

We are four in all.
여기에 쌓어 주십시오.
[yogie ssnoo chusipsio]
here fill in please!

나의 방은 몇 호실입니까?
[nau i pang un myotosirimnigga]
my room what number is?

이 방값은 얼마입니까?
[i pang i gapsun olmaimnigga]
this room price how much is?

이 방이 마음에 드나다.
[i pang i maume tumnida]
this room heart to suits

나는 외출합니다.
[nanun oechulhamnida]
go out

1 시에 돌아오겠습니다.
[hansie toraogetsumnidn]
will come back

오늘 저녁에는 늦게
[onul chonyogenun nutge
today the evening in late

돌아오겠습니다.
[toroagetsumnida]
will come back

누가 나를 찾아왔습니까?
[nuga narul chajawatsumnigga]
anyone me has asked for?

나에게 편지가 왔습니까?
[na ege pyonjiga watsumnigga]
me for letter came?

호실관리원을 찾아주십시오.
[hosilgwalliwonul chajajusipsio]
a chambermaid seek!

들어 오십시오.
[turoosipsio]
come in!

Please, fill this in!

What is my room number?

What is the price of this room?

I like this room.

I am going out.

This evening I will come back late.

I am back now.

Has anyone called for me?

Is there any mail for me?

Please send a chambermaid.

Come in.
언제 저녁식사를 할 수 있습니까?
[onje chonyoksarul halsuitsumnigga] when dinner can do?
여기에 영어를 안다는 분이
[yogie yong-orul anun puni] here English knowing person
있습니까?
[itsumnigga] is?

...을 가져다주십시오.
[...ul kajyodajusipsio] bring!
채일 아침 6시에
[raeil achin yosotsie] tomorrow morning 6 o'clock at
나를 깨워주십시오.
[narul ggaewojusipsio] wake up!
가져다주십시오.
[kajyodajusipsio] bring!

이것을 항공우편으로
[igosul hang·gong·upyonuro] this air mail by
보내주십시오.
[ponaejusipsio] send!

이것을 세탁소에 맡겨주십시오.
[igosul setaks·e matgyojusipsio] this the laundry to entrust!
 언제 면 되겠습니까?
[onjemyon toegetsumnigga] when will be ready?

When can I have dinner?
Is there anyone here who can speak English?

Please bring me ... .
Please wake me at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

Please bring my breakfast to my room!

Please send it by air mail.

Iron these things, please.

I want to send it to the laundry.

When will I get it back?
나는 오늘 저녁에
[nanun onul chonyoge]
I today the evening in
떠남니다.
ddonamnida]
leave
돈을 정산하려고 합니다.
[tonul chongsanhyogo hamnida]
money to settle want
계산서를 만들어주십시오.
[kyesansorul mandurochusipsio]
the bill get ready!
나는 얼마 물어야 합니까?
[nanun olma mumoroya hamnigga]
I how much must pay?

식당에서 [sikdang·eso]

식당에 갑시다.
[sikdang·e kapsida]
the restaurant to go!
무엇을 드릴가요?
[muosul turilgayo]
what may offer?

This evening I am going to leave.
I want to settle my bill.
Get my bill ready, please.
How much must I pay?

석관 [ryogwan] hotel
접수 [chopsu] reception
호실 [hosil] room
호실관리원 [hosigwalliwon] chambermaid
지배인 [chibaein] manager
등록장 [tungrokjang] hotel register
식당 [sikdang] restaurant
간이식당 [kanisikdang] snack bar
휴게실 [hyugyesil] lounge

1층 [ilchung] ground floor
2층 [ichung] first floor
승강기 [sung·gang·gi] lift
1 인용 방 [irinyong bang] single room
2 인용 방 [iinyong bang] double room
계산서 [kyesanso] bill
위생실 [wisaengsil] toilet
목욕칸 [mogyok·kan] bathroom

In a Restaurant

Let's go to the restaurant!
What can I do for you?
음식표를 좀 보여주십시오.
[um sikpyorul chom poyojusipsio]  
the menu a little show please!

나는 정식을 주문합니다.
[nanun chongsigul chumunhamnida]  
I the table d’hôte order

곧 됩니다か?
[kot toemnigga]  
soon is ready?

차를 드시겠습니까?
[charul tusigetsumnigga]  
tea will drink

아니면 커피를 드시겠습니까?
[animyon kopirul tusigetsumnigga]  
or coffee will drink?

커피를 냄겠습니까.
[kopirul tulgetsumnigda]  
coffee will drink

저기에 밥과 군빵이
[yogie papseu kunbangi]  
here boiled rice and toast

있습니까.
[itsumnida]  
are

어느것을 드시겠습니까?
[onugosul tusigetsumnigga]  
which will eat

밥을 먹겠습니다.
[pabul mokgetsumnida]  
boiled rice will eat

커피의 맛이 어떻습니까?
[kopiui masi oddosumnigga]  
coffee of the taste how is?

사탕가루를 더 드십시오!
[satanggarurul to tusipsio]  
sugar more take please!

소졌을 좋아하십니까?
[soojul choahasimnigga]  
milk like?

Menu please!

I’ll have the table d’hôte.

Can I have it right away?

Do you want tea or coffee?

I want coffee.

Here are boiled rice and toast.

Which will you have?

I’ll have boiled rice.

How do you like the coffee?

Have some more sugar, please!

Do you like milk?
생닭알을 드시겠습니까?
[saengdalgarul tusigetsumnigga]
fresh egg
will take?

씩다를 좀.
[bbadarul chom]
butter a little

햄을 좀.
[haemul chom]
ham a little

소금을 좀 주십시오.
[sogumul chom chusipsio]
salt a little give please!

후추가루를 좀 주십시오.
[huchuggarurul chom chusipsio]
pepper a little give please!

빵을 좀 더 주십시오.
[bbang-ul chomdo chusipsio]
bread some more give please!

나는 이것을 주문하지
[nanun igosul chumunhaji
I this ordered

나왔습니다.
anatsumnida]
not

포도술을 드시겠습니까 아니면
[podosurul tusigetsumnigga animyon
wine
will drink or

맥주를
[maekjuruul tusigetsumnigga]
beer will drink?

맥주를 마시겠습니다.
[maekjuruul masigetsumnida]
beer will drink

친선을 위하여 마십시다.
[chinsonul wihayo masipsida]
freindship for let’s drink!

우리의 상봉을 위하여!
[uriul sangbong-ul wihayo] our meeting for!

Will you have some fresh eggs?
A little butter, please.
A little ham, please.
May I have some salt, please!
May I have some pepper, please?
Some more bread, please!
This is not what I ordered.
Will you drink wine or beer?
I will drink beer.
Let’s drink to our friendship!
To our meeting!
당신의 건강을 위하여! [tangsinui konggangul wihayo]  
for health
당신의 행복을 위하여! [tangsinui haengbogul wihayo]  
for happiness

남교기를 좀 더 드시겠습니까? [takgogirul chomdo tusigetsunmi]  
some more will take?
아니요, 고맙습니다. 총분합니다. [aniyo komapsunnida chungbunhanmida]  
no thanks you enough
고맙습니다. 더 먹고 싶지 않습니까. [komapsunnida to mokgosipin]  
will not more will eat
그렇게 오시면 감사합니다. [sikudagworo muosul turilgayo]  
for service what may offer

아, 좋은 조선사과를 드실시오. [i choun chosonagwarul tusipsio]  
this fine Korean apple take!

접대원 동무! 연말인가요? [chopdaewondongmu olmaiinnigga]  
waiter comrade! how much is?

To your health!
Will you have more chicken?
No, thank you. I have enough.
No more, thank you.

Thank you. It was delicious.
What would you like for dessert?
Help yourself to this fine Korean apple!
Waiter, let me have the bill.

식당 [sikdang] restaurant  
접대원 [chopdaewon] waiter  
식사안내표 [siksaanappeyo] menu
아침식사 [achimsiksa] breakfast  
접심식사 [chomsimsi] lunch
식사 안내 표  
저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] dinner
국 [kuk] soup
밥 [pap] boiled rice
빵 [bbang] bread
바다 [bbada] butter
치즈 [chijiu] cheese
찬식 [chanumsik] cold meal
사탕가루 [satang·garu] sugar
남쇄 [namsae] vegetable
생채 [saengchae] salad
삶은 닭알 [salmun dalgal] boiled egg
반숙한 닭알 [pansukan dalgal] soft boiled egg
고기 [kogi] meat
닭고기 [takgogi] chicken
소고기 [sogogi] beef
돼지고기 [twaegigogi] pork
양고기 [yang·gogi] mutton
지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] boiled fish
파일 [kwail] fruit
사과 [sagwa] apple
배 [pae] pear
복숭아 [poksung·a] peach
포도 [podo] grapes
귤 [kyul] orange
딸기 [ddalgigi] strawberry
참외 [chamoe] melon
바나나 [panana] banana
도마토 [tomado] tomato
술 [sul] liquor
인삼술 [insamsul] Insam wine, ginseng wine
포도술 [podosul] grape wine
맥주 [maekju] beer
고야크 [ggonyaku] cognac
샴팡 [syampang] champagne
탄산물 [tansanmul] soda water
커피 [kopi] coffee
코코아 [koko] cocoa
초콜릿 [chytokolletu] chocolate
차 [cha] tea
레몬수 [remonsu] lemonade
소젖 [sojot] milk
사이다 [saida] fizzy drink
얼음보송이 [orumbosung·i] ice-cream
파일청량음료 [kwailchongryang·umryo] sherbet
생과자 [saeng·gwaja] cake
칼 [kal] knife
포크 [poku] fork
술가락 [sutgarak] spoon
저가락 [choggarak] chopsticks
상수건 [sangsugon] napkin
채팅이 [chaetori] ashtray
담배 [tambae] cigarette
성냥 [songnyang] match

우편국에서 [upyon·gugeso]

국제 우편국은 어디 오디 게이시
the international post office where
있습니까?
itsumigga]
is?

At the Post-Office

Where is the international post office?
우표를 주십시오.
stamp give please!
[i chonborul chigospumnida]
this telegram to send want

이 전보를 치고싶습니다.
[chonboyongjinun odi itsumnigga]
the telegram form where is?
이 전보를 보내주십시오.
[i chonborul ponaejusipsio]
this telegram send please!
이 소포를 보내고싶습니다.
[i soporul ponaegospumnida]
this parcel to send want
이 편지를 항공우편으로
[i pyonjirul hang-gong-upyonuro
this letter air mail by
 보내주십시오.
ponaejusipsio] send please!

어칠 후에 영국에
[myochilhue yong·guge
how many days after England to
도착합니까?
tochakamnigga] reach?

나는 런던에 전화를
[nanun londone chonhwarul
I London to telephone

결려고합니다.
kollyogohamnida] will call

별리 대주면 좋겠습니다.
[bballi taejumyon choketsumnida]
quickly if connects will be good
아직 말이 끝나지 않았습니다.
[ajik mari ggunaji anatsumnida]
still word finished not
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어디서 돈을 바꿀 수 있습니까? [odiso tonul paggulsu itsumnigga]</td>
<td>Where can I change money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나는 영국돈을 가지고 있습니다. [nanun yong·gukdonul kajigoitsumnida]</td>
<td>I have some pounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have some dollars.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조선돈으로 바꾸어줄 수 있습니까? [chosondonuro pagguojulsu itsumnigga]</td>
<td>Can I change it for Korean currency?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will change 50 pounds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예. [ye]</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마나 바꾸겠습니다? [olmana paggusetsumniga]</td>
<td>How much will you change?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 파운드를 바꾸겠습니다. [osip·paundurul paggusetsumnida]</td>
<td>I will change 20 dollars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 달러를 바꿔주실시오. [isipddallarul paggwujusipsio]</td>
<td>I want some small change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 dollars change please!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간돈으로 바꿔주실시오. [chandonuro paggwujusipsio]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small money into change please!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
돈을 여기로 주십시오. [tonul yogyiro chusipsio] money here give please
돈을 받으십시오. [tonul padusipsio] the money receive please
고맙습니다. [komapsumnida] thank you

리발소에서 [ribalsoeso]

어서 앉으십시오. [oso anjusipsio] please sit down!
고맙습니다. [komapsumnida] thank you

면도를 하겠습니까 아니면 [myondorul hagetsumnigga animyon shaving would have or
머리를 깎겠습니다가? [morirul ggakgetsumnigga] the hair cut would have?
두나 부탁합니다. [tul ta putakamnida] two all request please!
파마를 약간 해주십시오. [pamarul yakgan haejusipsio] permanent little make please!
머리를 씻겠습니다가? [morirul ssitgetsumnigga] hair washed would have?
예, 부탁합니다. [ye putakamnida] yes request please

수표 [supyo] signature

At the Hairdresser’s

Please let me have the money.
Please, take the money.
Thank you!

수표 [supyo] signature

At the Hairdresser’s

Please take a seat!

Thank you!

Would you care to have a hair cut or a shave?

Both, please!

I want to have a soft perm.

Would you care to have your hair washed?

Yes, if you please.
 얼마 입니까?
[olmainnjiga]
how much is?

...원 입니다.
[...won imnida]
...won is

의사한데서 [uisahanteso]

병원으로 실어다주십시오.
[pyongwonuro sirodajusipsio]
the hospital to carry please!

의사를 불러주십시오.
[uisarul pullo jusipsio]
a doctor call please!

저는 몸이 몹시 불편합니다.
[chonun momi mopsi pulpyonhamnida]
I the body very not well
어디가 불편합니까?
[odiga pulpyonhamniggga]
which place not well?

언제부터 암습니까?
[onjebuto alsumnigga]
when since are ill?

어제부터 암습니다.
[ojebuto alsumnida]
yesterday since am ill
지금 어디가 아픔니까?
[chigum odiga apumnigga]
now which place pain?

머리가 아픔니다.
[moriga apumnida]
the head pain

배가 아픔니다.
[paega apumnida]
the stomach pain

여기가 아픔니다.
[yogiga apumnida]
here pain

How much is it?

...won, please.

At the Doctor’s

Please take me to the hospital!

Please send for a doctor!

I don’t feel very well.

What’s wrong with you?

How long have you been ill?

I have been ill since yesterday.

What are you suffering from?

I’ve a headache.

I’ve a stomach-ache.

I have a pain here.
감기에 걸렸습니다. 
[kamgie kollyotsumnida]
I've caught a cold.

기침합니다. 
[kichimhamnida]
cough

이 발이 아프나요. 
[ibbari apumnida]
a tooth pain

오한이 낫나요. 
[ohani namnida]
chills have

열사합니다. 
[solsahamnida]
have diarrhoea

어지럽습니다. 
[ojiropsumnida]
dizzy

식욕이 있습니까? 
[sigyogi itsumnigga]
appetite is there?

식욕이 없습니다. 
[sigyogi opsumnida]
appetite there is not

당신의 맥박이 좀 빠릅니다. 
[tangsinun maekbagi chom pulse rather quick]
Your pulse is rather fast.

당신은 열이 있습니다. 
[tangsinun yori itsumnida]
you a fever there is

당신은 감기에 걸렸습니다. 
[tangsinun kamgie kollyotsumnida]
You’ve caught a cold.
병원에 입원해야 합니다가?
[p Yongwone ibwonaeya hamnigga]
hospital to have to go?
여칠 안정해야 합니까?
[m Yochil anjonghaeya hamnigga]
how many days quiet have to keep?
이 약을 몇번
[i yagul myotbon
this medicine how many times
먹어야 합니까?
[mogoya hamnigga]
eat have to
병원 [pyong-won] hospital
약국 [yakguk] pharmacy
의사 [uisa] doctor
간호사 [kanhowon] nurse
내과의사 [naeggwauisa] physician
외과의사 [oeggwauisa] surgeon
안과의사 [amg-wauisa] oculist
구강과의사 [kugang-gwauisa] dentist
신경과의사 [singyong-gwauisa] neurologist
피부과의사 [pibuggwauisa] dermatologist
소아과의사 [soaggwauisa] paediatrician
산부인과의사 [sanbuingwauisa] gynaecologist
병 [pyong] illness

Do I have to go to hospital?
How long do I have to stay in bed?
How often do I have to take the medicine?

فيل [yol] temperature
맥박 [maekbak] pulse
혈압 [hyorap] blood pressure
처방 [chobang] prescription
약 [yak] medicine
주사 [chusa] injection
붕대 [pungdae] bandage
가체 [kaje] gauze
할지면 [taljimyon] absorbent cotton
반창고 [panchang-go] adhesive tape
요드탕크 [yodutingku] iodine tincture
안마 [anma] massage

Human Body

1. 몸 [mom] The body
머리 [mori] head
얼굴 [olgul] face
목 [mok] neck
어깨 [oggae] shoulder
팔 [pal] arm
가슴 [kasum] chest, breast
배 [paee] belly
등 [tung] back
심장 [simjang] heart

괴 [pi] blood
폐 [pe] lungs
위 [wi] stomach
허리 [hori] waist
다리 [tari] leg

머리 [mori] The head
머리칼 [morikal] hair
이마 [ima] forehead
눈썹 [nunso] eyebrow
눈 [nun] eye
코 [ko] nose
입 [ip] mouth
입술 [ipsul] lips
이발 [ibbal] teeth

허 [hyo] tongue
턱 [tok] chin
턱수염 [toksuyom] beard
코수염 [kosuyom] moustache
구레나룻 [kurenarut] whiskers
귀 [kwi] ear
뺨 [bbyam] cheeks

3. 팔 [pal] The arm
팔꿈치 [palggumchi] elbow
손 [son] hand
손가락 [songarak] finger
손바닥 [sonbadak] palm
손톱 [sontop] nail

살가죽 [salgajuk] skin
살 [sal] flesh
협살 [himsal] muscles
뼈 [bbyo] bones

4. 다리 [tari] The leg
밖에다리 [nopjokdari] thigh
무릎 [murup] knee
장반지 [changddanji] calf

발 [pal] foot
발가락 [palgarak] toe
발바닥 [palbadak] sole (of the foot)

길을 가는 길을 대주십시오. | Please tell me the way to ⋯.
⋯으로 가는 길을 대주십시오.
평양역으로 가는 길이
[pyongyang-yoguro kanun kiri]
Pyongyang Station to going way

어느것입니까?
onugosiminigga]
which is?

이것이 평양역으로 가는 길이
[i korinun odiro kamnigga]
this Pyongyang Station to going way is?

여는 방향으로 가야 합니까?
[onu panghyang-uro kaya hamnigga]
which direction to must go?

나는 골바로 가야 합니까?
[nanun kotbaro kaya hamnigga]
I straight go must?

나는 왼쪽으로 돌아야 합니까?
[nanun oenjoguro toraya hamnigga]
I the left to turn must?

당신은 그대로 가면 됩니다.
[tangsinun kudaero kamyon toemnida]
you as it is when go become

여기서 ...까지는 멀니까?
[yogiso ...ggajinun momnigga]
from here ...till far is?

여기서 평양역까지
[yogiso pyongyang-yoggygaji]
here from Pyongyang Station to

 얼마나 멀니까?
[olmana momnigga]
how far is?

Which is the way to Pyongyang Station?
Is this the way to Pyongyang Station?
Where does this road lead to?
Which way should I go?
Should I go straight on?
Should I turn left?
Please going straight on.
Is ... far from here?
How far is it from here to Pyongyang Station?
여기서 대략 1 킬로미터입니다. [yogiso taeryak hankirometominida]
here from about one kilometre is
여기는 어디입니까? [yoginun odiimmigga]
here which place is?
이 거리이름은 무엇입니까? [i koriirumun muosimmigga]
this street name what is?
이것은 무슨 집입니까? [igosun musun chibimmigga]
this what house is?

동쪽 [tongjjok] east
서쪽 [sojjok] west
남쪽 [namjjok] south
북쪽 [pukjjok] north
오른쪽의 [오른쪽] [orunjjogui] ([orunjjok]) right
왼쪽이 [왼쪽] [oenjjogui] ([oenjjok]) left
구역 [kuyok] district
길 [kil] road
거리 [kori] street
상점거리 [sangjjomgori] shopping street
인도 [indo] pavement
십자로 [sipjaro] crossroads
전용길 [konnumgil] pedestrian crossing

다리 [tari] bridge
신호등 [sinhodung] traffic signal
안내소 [annaeso] Inquiry Office
충합대학 [chonghapdaehak] university
단과대학 [tankwadaehak] college
학교 [hakgyo] school
도서관 [tosogwan] library
광장 [kwangjang] square
경기장 [kyong-gijang] stadium
공원 [kongwon] park
분수 [punsu] fountain
髻 [tap] tower
시장 [sijang] market
강 [kang] river
운하 [unha] canal

광고 및 간판 [kwang-go mit kanpan]

광고 [kwang-go] Announcement, Notice, Advertisement
나가는 곳 [naganungot] Exit

Notices and Signs
Taxis and Buses

Where is the taxi stand?

Call a taxi, please!

Please wait a moment for me here.

Go straight on, please!

Turn to the right at the next crossing!

 tackled mit bbosu

택시점을 뭐 [taeksijongryusoga]
the taxi stand
어디입니까?
which place is?

[odiimniigga]

택시를 불러주세요.
a taxi call please!

나를 ...까지 태워주십시오.
me... till

[taewodajusipsio]
carry please!

여기서 나를 좀 기다려주십시오.
[here me a moment]

[kidaryo] wait please!

기다려주십시오.
go on please!

다음 교차점에서 오른쪽으로
[the next crossing at the right]

torajusipsio]
to turn!
좀 더 빨리 가십시오.
[chom do bballi kapsida]
a little more fast go please!

 여기서 세워 주십시오.
yogiso sewojusipsio
here stop please!

 얼마나 멀면 됩니까?
[olma mulmyon toemnigga]
how much pay come to?

...으로 가는 버스 정류소가
[...uro kanun bbosujongryusoga]
...to going bus stop

 어디 입니까?
odiimnigga
which place is?

 여기서 몇 정류소
[yogiso myot chongryuso]
here from how many stop

 가면 됩니까?
kamyon toemnigga
when go will be?

시내구경 [sinaegugyong]

판광지들을 좀
[kwan gwangjidurul chom]
tourist resorts some

말해 주십시오.
malhaejusipsio
tell please

Hurry up, please!

Stop here, please!

What is the fare?

Where is the bus stop for...?

How many stops is it from here?

택시 [taeksi] taxi
시내버스 [sinaebbosu] city bus
시외버스 [sioebbosu] long-distance
bus, suburb service bus
무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] trolley
bus

시내구경 [sinaegugyong]

전차 [choncha] streetcar
지하철도 [chihacholdo] underground railway, subway
버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] bus
stop

City Sightseeing

Please tell me some
tourist resorts.
나는 만경대를 방문하겠어요.
(nanun mangyongdaeul pangmun hamnida]

I want to visit Mangyongdae.

나는 주체사상탑을 보고 싶어요.
(nanun chuchesasangtab poassumyon hamnida]

I want to see the Tower of the Juche Idea (the Arch of Triumph).

나는 국제친선전람관을 방문하겠어요.
(nanun kukjechinsonjollamkwanul pangmunnayossumyon hamnida]

I want to visit the International Friendship Exhibition.

나는 김일성경기장으로 갔어요.
(nanun Kim il Sung gyonggijang uro kassumyon hamnida]

I want to go to Kim Il Sung Stadium.

나는 인민대학습당을 방문하겠어요.
(nanun inmindaeahnispang (pyongyangsanwon)ul poassumyon hamnida]

I want to see the Grand People's Study House (the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital).
나는 서해갈문을 보았으면
[nanun sohegammunul poassumyon]  I want to see the West Sea Barrage.
합니까. (hamnida] I want.
나는 백두산(금강산)으로
[nanun paekdusan(kumgangsan)u]o Mt. Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang)to
갔으면 합니까. [kassumyon hamnida] to go want
영어로 된 안내서를 [yong·oro toen annaesorul] English in a guidebook
주십시오. [chusipsio] give please!
영어로 아는 안내원을 [yong·orul anun annaewonul] English knowing guide
불여주십시오. [puchyojusipsio] give please!
시내관광버스가 [sinaegwan·gwangbbosuga itsumnigga] city sightseeing bus is there?
버스가 언제 떠나니까? [bbosuga onje ddonamnigga] the bus when start?
버스가 언제 돌아오니까? [bbosuga onje toraomnigga] the bus when get back?
표값은 얼마입니까? [pyogapsun olmaimnigga] ticket price how much is?
이것은 무엇입니까? [igosun muosimnigga] this what is?
I want to go to Mt. Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang).
Can I have an English guidebook?
Is there any city sightseeing bus? When does the bus leave? What’s the fare? What is this?
저것은 무엇입니까?
[chogosun muosimnigga]
that what is?

극장 [kukjang]

지금 무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?
[chigum muosi yang-roleo itsumnigga]
now what is showing?

지금 평양대극장에서
[chigum pyongyang daegukjang eso
now the Pyongyang Grand Theatre in
무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?
muosi yang-roleo itsumnigga]
what is showing?

가극을 어디서 볼 수 있습니까?
[kagugul odiso polsu itsumnigga]
an opera where can see?

공연이 몇 시에
[kong'yoni myotsie
the performance what time in

시작되니까?
sijakdoemnigga]
begins?

공연이 몇 시에
[kong'yoni myotsie
the performance what time in

끝나니까?
ggunnamnigga]
ends?

몇 시간 상연됩니까?
[myotsigan yang-roleo itsumnigga]
how much time shows?

나는 좋은 자리를
[nanun choun charirul
I a good seat

받았으면 합니다.
padassumyon hamnida)
to get want

What is that?

Theatre

What's on now?

What's on now at the
Pyongyang Grand
Theatre?

Where can I see an opera?

What time does the per-
formance begin?

How long does it last?

I want a good seat.
저의 자리까지 안내해주십시오.
[choui chariggaji annaehaejusipsio]
my seat to lead please!

휴식은 얼마나 동안입니다?
[hyusigun olmadong·animnigga]
the interval how long is?

공연이 마음에 드니까?
[kong·yon i maume tumnigga]
the performance the heart to suit?

음악회가 마음에 드니까?
[umakoega maume tumnigga]
the concert the heart to suit?

영화가 마음에 드니까?
[yonghwaga maume tumnigga]
the film the heart to suit?

극장 [kukjang] theatre

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] 
Pyongyang Grand Theatre

교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] circus

영화관 [yonghwagwan] cinema

공연순서 [kong·yonsunso] programme

공연 [kong·yon] play

음악회 [umakoe] concert

가극 [kaguk] opera

연극 [yon·guk] drama

사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi]

여기서 사진을 찍어도 됩니다.
[yogiso sajinul jjigodo toemnigga]
here a photograph take may?

저와 함께 사진을 찍어。
[chowa hamgge sajinul me with together photograph

찍읍시다.
jjigupsida]
let's take!

Please show me to your seat!

How long is the interval?

Did you like the performance?

Did you like the concert?

Did you like the film?

영화 [yonghwa] film
음악 [umak] music
민요 [minyo] folk song
교예음악 [kojonumak] classical music
경악 [kyong·umak] light music
민족무용 [minjongmuyong] folk dance
바레무용 [paremuyong] ballet
교예 [kyoye] circus

Photographing

May I take a picture here?

Would you mind posing with me?
Shopping

Will you go shopping with me?

With pleasure.

What can I do for you?

I want to buy….

Where can I buy a hat and a pair of shoes?

Would you like to buy a hat?

Please show me….
다른것을 보여주십시오.
[tarun gosul poyojusipsio]  
another one show please!
나는 이것을 가지겠습니다.
[nanun igosul kajigetsumnida]  
I this take will
 얼마입니까?
[olmaimnigga]  
how much is?
것은 얼마입니까?
[igosun olmaimnigga]  
this how much is?
저것은 얼마입니까?
[chogosun olmaimnigga]  
that how much is?
조영사전이
[choyongsajoni]  
the Korean-English dictionary
있습니까?
[itsumnigga]  
is there?
조선지도가 있습니까?
[chosonjidoga itsumnigga]  
Korean map is there?
이 책의 영문판이
[i chaegui yongmunpani]  
this book of the English edition
있습니까?
[itsumnigga]  
is there?
예, 이것이 영문판입니다.
[ye igosi yongmunpanimnida]  
yes this an English edition is
그것을 보여주십시오.
[kugosul poyojusipsio]  
show please
값은 얼마입니까?
[kapsun olmaimnigga]  
the price how much is?

Please show me another one!
I will take this.
How much is that?
What's the price of this one?
What's the price of that one?
Have you a Korean-English dictionary?
Have you a map of Korea?
Have you got the English edition of this book?
Yes, this is an English edition.
Please let me see it!
What's the price, please!
한부 사겠습니다.
[hanbu sagetsumnida] a copy will buy
이 시계를 고쳐 주실시오.
[i sigyerul kochyöjusipsio] this watch repair please!
이 필름을 현상해 주실시요.
[i pillimul hyonsanghæjusipsio] this film develop please!
언제면 됩니까?
[onjemyon toemnigga] when is ready?

백화점 [paekwajom] department store
기념품 [kinyompum] souvenir
그림 [kurim] picture
신발 [sinbal] shoes
신발상점 [sinbaljangjom] shoe shop
시계 [sigye] watch
시계상점 [sigyesangjom] watch shop
책 [chaek] book
책방 [chaekbang] book shop
농이감 [noriggam] toy
인형 [inhyong] doll
만년필 [mannyonpil] fountain-pen
화장품 [hwajangpum] cosmetic

치약 [chiyak] toothpaste
치솔 [chissol] toothbrush
면도칼 [myondokal] razor
빗 [pit] comb
세면수건 [semyonsugon] towel
손수건 [sonsubong] handkerchief
양복점 [yangbokjom] tailor shop
넥타이 [nektai] necktie
모자 [moja] hat
장갑 [changgap] gloves
긴 양말 [kinyangmal] stockings
짧은 양말 [jjalbunyangmal] socks
속내의 [songnaeui] underwear
사진용품 상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom] camera shop

I’ll take a copy.
Please repair this watch!
Develop this film, please!
When will it be ready?
### Numerals

1. The cardinal numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>The pure Korean cardinal numbers</th>
<th>The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>substantival</td>
<td>substantival, adjectival</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나 [hana]</td>
<td>한 [han]</td>
<td>일 [il]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>두 [tu]</td>
<td>이 [i]</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>셋 [se]</td>
<td>삼 [sam]</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넷 [ne]</td>
<td>사 [sa]</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>오 [o]</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>륭 [ryuk]</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>칠 [chil]</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>팔 [pal]</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>구 [ku]</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>십 [sip]</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>열하나</td>
<td>열한</td>
<td>십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yolhana]</td>
<td>[yolhan]</td>
<td>[sibil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>열두</td>
<td>열두</td>
<td>십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yoldul]</td>
<td>[yoldu]</td>
<td>[sibi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>열셋</td>
<td>열세</td>
<td>십삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yolset]</td>
<td>[yolse]</td>
<td>[sipsam]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>열넷</td>
<td>열네</td>
<td>십사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yolnet]</td>
<td>[yolne]</td>
<td>[sipsa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>십오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yoldasot]</td>
<td>[yoldasot]</td>
<td>[sibo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>십육</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yoryosot]</td>
<td>[yoryosot]</td>
<td>[simryuk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>열일곱</td>
<td>열 일곱</td>
<td>십칠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yorilgop]</td>
<td>[yorilgop]</td>
<td>[sipchil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>십팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yoryodol]</td>
<td>[yoryodol]</td>
<td>[sippal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>열 아홉</td>
<td>십구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yorahop]</td>
<td>[yorahop]</td>
<td>[sipgu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스무</td>
<td>이십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[sumul]</td>
<td>[sumu]</td>
<td>[isip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>스물한</td>
<td>스물한</td>
<td>이십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[sumulhana]</td>
<td>[sumulhan]</td>
<td>[isibil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>스물두</td>
<td>스물두</td>
<td>이십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[sumuldul]</td>
<td>[sumuldul]</td>
<td>[isibi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>서른</td>
<td>서른</td>
<td>삼십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[sorun]</td>
<td>[sorun]</td>
<td>[samsip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>사십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[mahun]</td>
<td>[mahun]</td>
<td>[sasip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>둘</td>
<td>둘</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[swin]</td>
<td>[swin]</td>
<td>[osip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>륙십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yesun]</td>
<td>[yesun]</td>
<td>[ryuksip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>일곱</td>
<td>일곱</td>
<td>칠십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[ilhun]</td>
<td>[ilhun]</td>
<td>[chilsip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>팔십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[yodun]</td>
<td>[yodun]</td>
<td>[palsip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eleven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fourteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fifteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sixteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>seventeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eighteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nineteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>twenty one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>twenty two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sixty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>seventy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eighty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

71
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>아훈 [ahun]</td>
<td>아훈 [ahun]</td>
<td>ninety hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백하나 [paek·hana]</td>
<td>백한 [paek·han]</td>
<td>a hundred and one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>백둘 [paekdul]</td>
<td>백두 [paekdu]</td>
<td>a hundred and two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>two hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>three hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>four hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>five hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>six hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>seven hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eight hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nine hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>천하나 [chonhana]</td>
<td>천한 [chonhan]</td>
<td>a thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a thousand and one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hundred thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>one million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ten million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hundred million</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. The ordinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pure Korean ordinal numbers</td>
<td>The pure Korean ordinal numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫 번째 [chot (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제일 [cheil]</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 번째 [tubonjjae]</td>
<td>제이 [chei]</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 번째 [sebonjjae]</td>
<td>제삼 [chesam]</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 번째 [nebonjjae]</td>
<td>제사 [chesa]</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 번째 [tasot (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제오 [cheo]</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯 번째 [yosot (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제육 [cheryuk]</td>
<td>sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱 번째 [ilgop (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제칠 [chechil]</td>
<td>seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟 번째 [yodol (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제팔 [chepal]</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉 번째 [ahop (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제구 [chegu]</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 번째 [yol (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제십 [chesiip]</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열한 번째 [yolhan (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제십일 [chesibil]</td>
<td>eleventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열두 번째 [yoldu (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제십이 [chesib]</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 번째 [sumbonjjae]</td>
<td>제이십 [cheisip]</td>
<td>twentieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사순 번째 [sorun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제삼십 [chesamsip]</td>
<td>thirtieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마흔 번째 [mahun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제사십 [chesasip]</td>
<td>fortieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십 번째 [swin (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제오십 [cheosip]</td>
<td>fiftieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예순 번째 [yesun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제육십 [cheryuksip]</td>
<td>sixtieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일흔 번째 [ilhun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제칠십 [chechilsip]</td>
<td>seventieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여든 번째 [yodun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제팔십 [cheapsip]</td>
<td>eightieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아흔 번째 [ahun (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제구십 [chekusip]</td>
<td>ninetieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백 번째 [paek (bon) jjae]</td>
<td>제일백 [cheilbaek]</td>
<td>hundredth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
돈 [ton]

1. Coins:
   1전 [iljon] 1jon
   5전 [ojon] 5jon
   10전 [sipjon] 10jon
   50전 [osipjon] 50jon
   1원 [irwon] 1won

시간 [sigan]

시간 [sigan] hour
시 [si] o’clock

1 시입니다. [hansiimnida]
   one o’clock is

2 시입니다. [tusiimnida]
two o’clock is

3 시입니다. [sesiimnida]
   three o’clock is

4 시입니다. [nesiimnida]
four o’clock is

5 시입니다. [tasotsiimnida]
six o’clock is

6 시입니다. [yosotsiimnida]
   seven o’clock is

7 시입니다. [ilgosiimnida]
   eight o’clock is

Money

2. Paper money:
   1원 [irwon] 1won
   5원 [owon] 5won
   10 원 [sibwon] 10won
   50 원 [osibwon] 50won
   100 원 [paegwon] 100won

Time

분 [pun] minute
초 [cho] second
년 [nyon] year
월 [wol] month

| It is one o’clock. |
| It is two o’clock. |
| It is three o’clock. |
| It is five o’clock. |
| It is six o’clock. |
| It is seven o’clock. |
8 시입니다.  
[yodolsiimnida]  
eight o’clock is

9 시입니다.  
[ahopsiimnida]  
nine o’clock is

10시입니다.  
[yolsiimnida]  
ten o’clock is

11시입니다.  
[yolhansiimnida]  
eleven o’clock is

12시입니다.  
[yoldusiimnida]  
twelve o’clock is

몇 시입니까?  
[myotsiimnigga]  
what time is?

1 시가  
[hansiga chinatsumnida]  
one o’clock past is

1 시 15분입니다.  
[hansi sibobunimnida]  
one o’clock fifteen minute is

2 시 15분  
[tusi sibobun]  
two o’clock fifteen minutes

전입니다.  
[jonimnida]  
before is

3 시반입니다.  
[sesibaniimnida]  
three o’clock half is

4 시  
[nesi sipbun jonimnida]  
four o’clock ten minutes before is

It is eight o’clock.

It is nine o’clock.

It is ten o’clock.

It is eleven o’clock.

It is twelve o’clock.

What time is it?

It’s past one.

It’s a quarter past one.

It’s a quarter to two.

It’s half past three.

It’s ten minutes to four.
오늘 [onul] today
어제 [oje] yesterday
그저께 [kujogge] the day before yesterday
내일 [raeil] tomorrow
모레 [more] the day after tomorrow
지난주 [chinanju] last week
지난달 [chinandal] last month
지난해 [chinanhae] last year

날씨 [nalssi]
오늘의 날씨는 어떻게닙니까? [onurui nalssiun odosumnigga] today of the weather how is?
좋은 날씨입니다. [choun nalssiimnida] good weather is
나쁜 날씨입니다. [nabbun nalssiimnida] bad weather is
따뜻합니다. [ttaddutamnida] warm is
춥습니다. [chupsumnida] cold
무덥습니다. [mudopsumnida] sultry
바람이 불닙니다. [parami pumnida] windy

Weather
What’s the weather like today?
It’s fine today.
It’s warm.
It’s cold.
It’s sultry.
It’s windy.
변개가 침니다.  
[pongaega chimnida]  
the lightning strikes

우뢰가 울니다.  
[uryoega umnida]  
the thunder rolls

비가 올것입니다.  
[piga olgosimnida]  
the rain will come

비가 올니다.  
[piga omnida]  
the rain comes

눈이 올니다.  
[nuni omnida]  
the snow comes

4 계절 [negyejol]  
봄 [pom] spring  
여름 [yorum] summer

월 [wol]  
오늘은 머칠입니까?  
[onurun myochirimnigga]  
today how many day is?

오늘은 7월 25일입니다.  
[onurun chirwol isiboirimnida]  
today July 25th is

Months

What’s the date today?  
Today is July 25.

1 월 [irwol] January  
2 월 [iwol] February  
3 월 [samwol] March  
4 월 [sawol] April  
5 월 [owol] May  
6 월 [ryuwol] June  
7 월 [chirwol] July  
8 월 [parwol] August  
9 월 [kuwol] September  
10 월 [siwol] October  
11 월 [sibirwol] November  
12 월 [sibiwol] December
Days of the Week

What day is it today?

Today is Monday.

오늘은 요일입니까?
What day of the week is?

오늘은 월요일입니다.
Monday is

월요일 [woryoil] Monday
화요일 [hwayoil] Tuesday
수요일 [suyoil] Wednesday
목요일 [mogyoil] Thursday

금요일 [kumyoil] Friday
토요일 [toyoil] Saturday
일요일 [iryoil] Sunday

GRAMMAR

LESSON 1

THE NOUN

14 In the Korean language there is no gender.

There is neither definite nor indefinite article.

15 The plural of the noun is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the singular of the noun.

16 The plural ending shows that the objects are two or more.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>사람 [saram] a man</td>
<td>사람 들 [saramdul] men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이 [ai] a child</td>
<td>아이 들 [aidul] children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나무 [namu] a tree</td>
<td>나무 들 [namudul] trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말 [mal] a horse</td>
<td>말 들 [maldul] horses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE DECISION OF
THE NOUN IN THE SINGULAR

17 The nominative for the question who or what has the nominative ending: 게시, 가, 이

- 게시 [ggeso] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)
  for example:
  아버님 게시 [abonimggeso] father
  explanation:
  아버님 + 게시
  noun nominative ending

- 가 [ga] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel)
  for example:
  ○ 아이가 [aiga] child
  explanation:
  아이 + 가
  noun nominative ending

  ○ 나무가 [namuga] tree
  explanation:
  나무 + 가
  noun nominative ending

- 이 [i] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant)
  for example:
  ○ 사람이 [sarami] man
  explanation:
  사람이 + 이
  noun nominative ending

  ○ 말이 [mari] horse
  explanation:
  말 + 이
  noun nominative ending

79
18 The accusative for the question whom or what has the accusative ending: 를,을

- 를 [ru] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel)
  for example:
  ○ 아이[airu] child
    explanation:
    아이 + 를
ing, accusative ending
  ○ 나무[namu] tree
    explanation:
    나무 + 를
ning, accusative ending

- 을 [ul] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant)
  for example:
  ○ 사람[sa] man
    explanation:
    사람 + 을
ning, accusative ending
  ○ 말[mar] horse
    explanation:
    말 + 을
ning, accusative ending

19 The genitive for the question whose has the genitive ending: 의

- 의 [ui]
  for example:
  ○ 아이의 [aiui] of a child, child's
    explanation:
    아이 + 의
ning, genitive ending
  ○ 나무의 [namuui] of a tree
    explanation:
    나무 + 의
ning, genitive ending
○ 사람의 [saramui] of a man, man's
   explanation:
   사람 + 의
   noun   genitive ending

○ 말의 [marui] of a horse
   explanation:
   말 + 의
   noun   genitive ending

20 The dative for the question whom, where to, where or when has the dative ending: 개, 에게, 에

- 개 [gge] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)
  for example:
  아버님 개[abonimgge] to one's father
  explanation:
  아버님 + 개
  noun   dative ending

- 에게 [ege] (when the word to be declined indicates an animate being)
  for example:
  ○ 아이 에게 [aiege] to one's child
  explanation:
  아이 + 에게
  noun   dative ending

○ 사람 에게 [sareamege] to a man
  explanation:
  사람 + 에게
  noun   dative ending

○ 말 에게 [marege] to a horse
  explanation:
  말 + 에게
  noun   dative ending

- 에 [e] (when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being)
for example:

- 나무에 [namue] to a tree
  explanation:
  
  나무 + 에  
  noun dative ending

- 평양에 [pyongyang.e] to Pyongyang, in Pyongyang
  explanation:
  
  평양 + 에  
  noun dative ending

- 낮에 [naje] in the daytime
  explanation:
  
  낮 + 에  
  noun dative ending

21 The locative for the question where or from where has the locative ending: 에게서, 에서

- 에게서 [egeso] (when the word to be declined indicates an animate being)
  explanation:
  
  아이 + 에게서  
  noun locative ending

- 사람에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man
  explanation:
  
  사람 + 에게서  
  noun locative ending

- 말에게서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse
  explanation:
  
  말 + 에게서  
  noun locative ending

- 에서 [eso] (when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being)

for example:

- 나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree
explanation:
나무 + 에서
noun locative ending

○ 공장에서 [kongjang·eso] in a factory, from a factory

explanation:
공장 + 에서
noun locative ending

22 The instrumental for the question to what, as what, with what, through what, from what, what for or after what has the instrumental ending: 로

-로[ro] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel or the consonantㄹ [l])
when the word to be declined ends in a consonant other than the consonantㄹ [l], the link-vowel 오[u] is inserted (refer to 194) between the word to be declined and the instrumental ending 로[ro].
the word to be declined + link-vowel 오[u] + instrumental ending 로[ro]

for example:
○ 동무로 [tongmuro] as a friend

explanation:
동무 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 손님으로 [sonnimuro] as a guest

explanation:
손님 + 오 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 아이로 [airo] as a child

explanation:
아이 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 사람으로 [saramuro] as a man
explanation:

사람 + 오 + 로
noun  link-vowel  instrumental ending

도끼로 [toggiro] with an ax

explanation:

도끼 + 로
noun  instrumental ending

○ 삼으로 [saburo] with a shovel

explanation:

삼 + 오 + 로
noun  link-vowel  instrumental ending

○ 팔지로 [pyonjiro] by a letter

explanation:

팔지 + 로
noun  instrumental ending

○ 우편으로 [upyonuro] by post

explanation:

우편 + 오 + 로
noun  link-vowel  instrumental ending

○ 철로 [chollo] of iron

explanation:

철 + 로
noun  instrumental ending

○ 감기로 [kamgiro] because of a cold

explanation:

감기 + 로
noun  instrumental ending

○ 병으로 [pyonguro] because of illness

explanation:

병 + 오 + 로
noun  link-vowel  instrumental ending

○ 도시로 [tosiro] to the city

explanation:

도시 + 로
noun  instrumental ending
○ 집으로 [chiburo] to one's home

explanation:

집 noun + 오 link-vowel + 로 instrumental ending

23 The coordinative case has the coordinative case ending: 와/과

- 와 [wa] and, with (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel)

for example:

○ 아버지와 어머니 [abojiwa omoni] father and mother

explanation:

아버지 noun + 와 coordinative case ending 어머니 noun

○ 아버지와 가다 [abojiwa kada] go with father

explanation:

아버지 noun + 와 coordinative case ending 가다 verb

- 과 [gwa] and, with (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant)

for example:

○ 사람과 말 [saramgwa mal] a man and a horse

explanation:

사람 noun + 과 coordinative case ending 말 noun

○ 형과 가다 [hyong gwa kada] go with brother

explanation:

형 noun + 과 coordinative case ending 가다 verb

24 The vocative has the vocative ending: 이시여, 여, 이여, 아, 아

- 이시여 [isiyo] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)

for example:

어머니 이시여! [omoniisiyo] mother!
explanation:
어머니  +  이시여!
noun  vocative ending

- 여[yo] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this is mostly used in written language)

for example:
누나여! [nunayo] sister!

explanation:
누나  +  여!
noun  vocative ending

- 이여[iyo] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this is mostly used in written language)

for example:
조국이여! [chogugiyo] fatherland!

explanation:
조국  +  이여!
noun  vocative ending

- 야[ya] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this represents a low form of courtesy (refer to 168) in colloquial language)

for example:
애 야! [aeya] child!

explanation:
애  +  야!
noun  vocative ending

- 아[a] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this represents a low form of courtesy in colloquial language)

for example:
영철 아! [yongchora] Yong Chol! (Yong Chol is a name)

explanation:
영철  +  아!
noun  vocative ending
25 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

아버지 [abonim] father

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아버님께서 [abonimggeso] one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아버님을 [abonimul] one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아버님의 [abonimui] of one’s father, father’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아버님께 [abonimgge] to one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아버님께서 [abonimgeso] by one’s father, from one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아버님으로 [abonimuro] to one’s father, as one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아버님과 [abonimgwa] one’s father and, with one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아버님이시여! [abonimisiyo] one’s father!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a vowel:

아이 [ai] child

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아이가 [aiga] one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아이를 [airul] one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아이의 [aiui] of one’s child, child’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아이께 [aiuge] to one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아이께셔 [aiugeso] by one’s child, from one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아이로 [airo] to one’s child, as one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아이와 [aiwa] one’s child and, with one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아이야! [aiya] one’s child!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
소 [so] cow

nominative
accusative
genitive
dative
locative
instrumental
coordinative
case
vocative

소가 [soga] a cow
소를 [sorul] a cow
소의 [soui] of a cow
소에게 [so·ege] to a cow
소에게서 [so·egeso] by a cow, from a cow
소로 [soro] to a cow, as a cow
소와 [sowa] a cow and, with a cow
not used

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

나무 [namu] tree

nominative
accusative
genitive
dative
locative
instrumental
coordinative
case
vocative

나무가 [namuga] a tree
나무를 [namurul] a tree
나무의 [namuui] of a tree
나무에 [namue] to a tree
나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree
나무로 [namuro] of a tree
나무와 [namuwa] a tree and, with a tree
not used

27 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a consonant:

사람 [saram] man

nominative
accusative
genitive
dative
locative

사람이 [sarami] a man
사람을 [saramul] a man
사람의 [saramui] of a man
사람에게 [saramege] to a man
사람에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>말이 [mari]</td>
<td>a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>말을 [marul]</td>
<td>a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>말의 [marui]</td>
<td>of a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>말에게 [marege]</td>
<td>to a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>말에게서 [maregeso]</td>
<td>by a horse, from a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>말로 [mallo]</td>
<td>on a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>말과 [malgwa]</td>
<td>a horse and, with a horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>책 [chaeki]</td>
<td>a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>책을 [chaegul]</td>
<td>a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>책의 [chaegui]</td>
<td>of a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>책에 [chaegae]</td>
<td>to a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>책에서 [chaegeso]</td>
<td>in a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>책으로 [chaeguro]</td>
<td>with a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>책과 [chaek-gwa]</td>
<td>a book and, with a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE DECLENSION OF A NOUN IN THE PLURAL

28 The declension of a noun in the plural is the same as the declension of the singular noun which ends in a consonant.
29 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아버님들 [abonimdul] fathers</td>
<td>fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아버님들의 [abonimdul-gseol] fathers</td>
<td>fathers, fathers'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아버님 [abonimdurui] of fathers</td>
<td>to fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아버님들께 [abonimdul-gge] to fathers</td>
<td>from fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아버님들께서 [abonimdure-geso] by fathers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아버님들로 [abonimdul-lo] to fathers, as fathers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아버님들과 [abonimdul-gwa] fathers and, with fathers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아버님들이시여 [abonimduri-si-yo] fathers!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

30 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an animate being:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아이들 [aidul] children</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아이들을 [aidul-gol] children</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아이들의 [aidul-ri] of children</td>
<td>children's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아이들에게 [aidul-re-gge] to children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아이들께서 [aidul-re-geso] by children, from children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아이들로 [aidul-lo] to children, as children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아이들과 [aidul-gwa] children and, with children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아이들아 [aidul-i] children!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

소들 [sodul] cows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>소들 [soduri] cows</td>
<td>cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>소들을 [sodul-gol] cows</td>
<td>cows</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| genitive       | 소들의 [sodurui] of cows  
| dative        | 소들에게 [sodurege] to cows  
| locative      | 소들에게서 [soduregeso] by cows, from cows  
| instrumental  | 소들로 [sodullo] to cows, as cows  
| coordinative  | 소들과 [sodulgwa] cows and, with cows  
| case          | not used  

| nominative   | 사람들이 [saramdurul] men  
| accusative   | 사람들 [saramduri] men  
| genitive     | 사람들 [saramdurul] men  
| dative       | 사람들에게 [saramdurege] to men  
| locative     | 사람들에게서 [saramduregeso] by men, from men  
| instrumental | 사람들로 [saramdullo] to men, as men  
| coordinative | 사람들과 [saramdulgwa] men and, with men  
| case         | 사람들이여! [saramduriyo] men!  

| nominative   | 말들이 [malduri] horses  
| accusative   | 말들을 [maldurul] horses  
| genitive     | 말들의 [maldurui] of horses  
| dative       | 말들에게 [maldeurege] to horses  
| locative     | 말들에게서 [maldeuregeso] by horses, from horses  
| instrumental | 말들로 [maldullo] on horses  
| coordinative | 말들과 [maldulgwa] horses and, with horses  
| case         | not used  

31 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an inanimate being:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nom G</th>
<th>명사</th>
<th>수 Geso</th>
<th>연</th>
<th>줄ul</th>
<th>개체</th>
<th>개체</th>
<th>개체</th>
<th>개체</th>
<th>개체</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom G</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc G</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen G</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
<td>나무들</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32 Table of the endings of the case of the noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>개서 [ggeso], 가 [ga] / 오 [i]</td>
<td>개서 [ggeso], 오 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>줄ul (ㄹ [l]) / 음ul</td>
<td>음ul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENITIVE</td>
<td>[ui]</td>
<td>[ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>[gge], [ege], [e]</td>
<td>[gge], [e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>[egeso], [eso]</td>
<td>[egeso], [eso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental coordinative case</td>
<td>[ro], [wa/gwa]</td>
<td>[ro], [gwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>이시여[isiyo], 여[yo]/이여[iyo], 아[ya]/아[ya]</td>
<td>이시여[isiyo], 여[yo], 아[ya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WORD ORDER**

33 The predicate always lies at the end of the sentence. for example:

버스 가 오다. *

A bus comes.

**explanation:**

1. 오 다 [oda] come
2. 버스 가 nominative ending

34 The subject usually lies at the beginning of the sentence. for example:

기차가 오다.

A train comes.
The genitive always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

O 아버지의 책
[abojiui chaek]  
the father of the book

The genitive 아버지의 lies before the word 책 it refers to.

O 여성들의 권리
[nyosongdurui kwolli]  
the right of women

The genitive 여성들의 lies before the word 권리 it refers to.

36 The object lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

학생이 [haksaeng-i]  
sinmunul  
ponda

A pupil reads the newspaper.

The object 학생이 lies between the subject 학생이 and the predicate 본다.
*3 보 + 다  [po da] read
stem  ending
보 + 냐다 [로다- low declarative form of the final
ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
본다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound 냐)

**LESSON 2**

**THE PERSONAL PRONOUN**

37 The personal pronoun has different forms: singular and plural and in the form of courtesy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form of courtesy</th>
<th>To a superior</th>
<th>To a person of the same rank or to an inferior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>저[cho] I</td>
<td>나[na] I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>저희[chohui] we</td>
<td>우리[uri] we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>너[no] you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addressed</td>
<td>plural</td>
<td>너희[nohui] you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

〇 저는*¹ 감니다*².
[chonun kamnida] I go.

**explanation:**

The speaker speaks to a superior.

*1 저 + 는 personal pronoun auxiliary ending (refer to 185)

*2 가 + 다  [ka da] go
stem  ending

95
가 + 보니다 [보니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 나)

○ 나는*1 간다*2.
[nanun kanda] | I go.
I go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

*1 나 + 는
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

*2 가 + 다
stem ending

가 + 뇌다 [뇌다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 나)

○ 저희는* 간다.
[chohuinun kanda] | We go.
we go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to a superior.

* 저희 + 는
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 우리는* 간다.
[urinun kanda] | We go.
we go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 우리 + 는
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 나는* 간다.
[nonun kanda] | You go.
you go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 너 + 는
demonstrative pronoun + personal pronoun

○ 너희는 * 간다.
[nohuinun kanda] You go.
you
go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to inferiors.

* 너희 + 는
demonstrative pronoun + personal pronoun

당신[tangsin] “you” is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun.

for example:
당신은* 갑니다.
[tangsinun kamnida] You go.
you go

explanation:
The speaker speaks to a superior.

* 동무 + 은
noun + personal pronoun

동무[tongmu] “comrade” is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun with the meaning “you”.

for example:
동무는* 간다.
[tongmunun kanda] You go.
comrade goes

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 동무 + 는
noun + personal pronoun

he, she, it, they (the person to be spoken about) are expressed as follows:

1. 그 [kù] he

2. 그녀자 [ku nyoja] she
3. 그것 [kugot] it
   demonstrative pronoun + incomplete noun

An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning in itself and expresses a complete meaning only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

4. 그들 [kudul] they
   demonstrative pronoun + plural ending
   그 녀자들 [ku nyojadul] they
   demonstrative pronoun noun + plural ending
   그것들 [kugotdul] they
   demonstrative pronoun incomplete noun plural ending

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

40 The declension of the personal pronoun 저는 [cho] “I” is the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27, 30, 31).

41 The declension of the personal pronoun 저 [che] “I” is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 저는 [cho] “I”.
Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 저 [cho] in the nominative.
The declension of the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 나 [na] “I” is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I”.

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I” in the nominative.

The declension of the personal pronoun 저회 [chohui] “we”
is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

저희 [chohui] we

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>저희가 [chohuiga] we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>저희를 [chohuirul] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>저희의 [chohuiui] our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>저희 에게 [chohuige] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>저희 에게서 [chohuigeso] by us, from us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>저희로 [chohuiro] to us, as we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>저희 와 [chohuiwa] we and, with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] “we”. The declension of the personal pronoun 저희들 [chohuidul] “we” formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

저희들 [chohuidul] we

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>저희들 [chohuiduri] we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>저희들을 [chohuidurul] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>저희들의 [chohuiduri] our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>저희들 에게 [chohuidurege] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>저희들 에게서 [chohuiduregeso] by us, from us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>저희들로 [chohuidullo] to us, as we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>저희들 과 [chohuidulga] we and, with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44 The declension of the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] “we” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indica-
tes an animate being (refer to 26).

우리 [uri] we

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>우리가 [uriga]</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>우리를 [urirul]</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>우리의 [uriui]</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>우리에게 [uriege]</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>우리에게서 [urigeso]</td>
<td>by us, from us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>우리로 [uriro]</td>
<td>to us, as we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>우리와 [uriwa]</td>
<td>we and, with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] “we”. The declension of the personal pronoun 우리들 [uridul] “we” formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

우리들 [uridul] we

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>우리들이 [uriduri]</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>우리들을 [uridurul]</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>우리들의 [uridurui]</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>우리들에게 [uridurege]</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>우리들에게서 [uridgeso]</td>
<td>by us, from us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>우리들로 [uridullo]</td>
<td>to us, as we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>우리들과 [uridulgw]</td>
<td>we and, with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

45 The declension of the personal pronoun 너 [no] “you” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 네 [ne] “you” is used in the nominati-
instead of the personal pronoun 会让你[no] “you”.

Not the nominative ending 가[ga] but the auxiliary ending 는[nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 会让你[no] “you” in the nominative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>네가 [nega]</th>
<th>네[no] you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>네[no]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The declension of the personal pronoun 너희[nohui] “you” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>너희가 [nohui-ga]</th>
<th>너희[nohui] you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>둔[nohui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural ending 들[dul] can be attached to the personal
pronoun 너희 [nohui] “you”. The declension of the personal pronoun 너희들 [nohuidul] formed by that is the same with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>너희 [nohui] you</td>
<td>너희들 [nohuidul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>너희들 [nohuidul] you</td>
<td>너희들 [nohuidul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>너희들 [nohuidul] you</td>
<td>너희들 [nohuidul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>너희들에게 [nohuidurege] you</td>
<td>너희들에게서 [nohuiduregeso] by you, from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>너희들로 [nohuidullo] to you, as you</td>
<td>너희들로 [nohuidullo] to you, as you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>너희들과 [nohuidulgwa] you and, with you</td>
<td>对你, and, with you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

47 The declension of the noun 당신 [tangsin] “you” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>당신 [tangsin] you</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsineul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsineul] you</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsineul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsineul] you</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsineul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>당신에게 [tangsinege] you</td>
<td>당신에게서 [tangsinegeso] by you, from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>당신으로 [tangsinuro] to you, as you</td>
<td>당신으로 [tangsinuro] to you, as you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>당신과 [tangsingwa] you and, with you</td>
<td>对你, and, with you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The plural form 당신들 [tangsinuld] "you" (pl) of the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" (sg) is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" (sg).

The declension of the noun 당신들 [tangsinuld] "you" (pl) is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신들 [tangsinuld] you

| Nominative | 당신들이 [tangsinuldi] you          |
| Accusative | 당신들을 [tangsinullo] you          |
| Genitive   | 당신들의 [tangsinuldeui] your       |
| Dative     | 당신들에게 [tangsinulege] you       |
| Locative   | 당신들에게서 [tangsinulegeso] by you, |
|            |        from you                      |
| Instrumental| 당신들로 [tangsinuldollo] to you, as |
| Coordinative case | 당신들과 [tangsinuldolgwado] you, and, |
| Vocative   | 당신들이여! [tangsinuldiryo] you!    |

The declension of 그 [ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그 [ku] he

| Nominative | 그가 [kuga] he |
| Accusative | 그를 [kurul] him |
| Genitive   | 그의 [kuui] his |
| Dative     | 그에게 [kuge] him |
| Locative   | 그에게서 [kuweso] by him, from him |
| Instrumental| 그로 [kuro] to him, as he |
| Coordinative case | 그와 [kuwa] he and, with him |
| Vocative   | not used       |
The declension of 그녀자 [ku nyoya] “she” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean Form</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>그녀자 [ku nyojaga]</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>그녀자들 [ku nyojaru]</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그녀자 [ku nyojai]</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그녀자에게 [ku nyoya·ege]</td>
<td>by her, from her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그녀자에게서 [ku nyoya·egeso]</td>
<td>by her, from her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>그녀자로 [ku nyojaro]</td>
<td>to her, as she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>그녀자와 [ku nyojawa]</td>
<td>she and, with her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The declension of 그것 [kugot] “it” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Korean Form</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>그것 [kugosi]</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>그것들 [kugosul]</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그것의 [kugosui]</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그것에 [kugose]</td>
<td>to it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그것에서 [kugoseso]</td>
<td>in it, from it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>그것으로 [kugosuro]</td>
<td>with it, through it, of it, because of it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>그것과 [kugotgwa]</td>
<td>it and, with it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The declension of 그들 [kudul] “they” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate
being (*refer to 27*).

그들 [kudul] they

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>그들이 [kuduri] they</td>
<td>그들을 [kudurul] them</td>
<td>그들의 [kudurui] their</td>
<td>그들에게 [kudurege] them</td>
<td>그들에게서 [kuduregeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they</td>
<td>그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they</td>
<td>그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they</td>
<td>그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they</td>
<td>그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그들에 [kudul] them</td>
<td>그들에 [kudul] them</td>
<td>그들에게 [kudulege] them</td>
<td>그들에게서 [kudulegeso] by them, from them</td>
<td>그들에게서 [kudulegeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52 The declension of 그 너희들은 [ku nyojadul] “they” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] they

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>그 너희들이 [ku nyojaduri] they</td>
<td>그 너희들들 [ku nyojadurul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들들의 [ku nyojadurui] their</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadurege] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게서 [ku nyojaduregeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그 너희들이 [ku nyojadui] them</td>
<td>그 너희들들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들들의 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadulege] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게서 [ku nyojadulegeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadule] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게 [ku nyojadulege] them</td>
<td>그 너희들에게서 [ku nyojadulegeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
<td>그 너희들 [ku nyojadul] them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53 The declension of 그들 [kugotdul] they is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (*refer to 27*).
그것들 [kgotdul] they

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>그것들 이 [kgotduri] they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>그것들 을 [kgotdorul] them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그것들 의 [kgotdorui] their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그것들 에 [kgotdure] them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그것들 에서 [kgotdureso] in them. from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>그것들 로 [kgotdullo] with them. through them. of them. because of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>그것들 과 [kgotdulgwa] they and. with them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

54 The genitive of the personal pronoun in Korean corresponds with the possessive pronoun in English.

for example:

- 나의* [naui] 아버지 [aboji] my father
- 나의 [naui] 어머니 [omoni] my mother
- 나의 [naui] 집 [chip] my house
- 나의 동무들 [naui tongmudul] my friends

explanation:

*나 + 의 (나 – personal pronoun 의 – genitive ending of the personal pronoun)
55 Table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가 [ga]</td>
<td>가 [ga] / 아 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>는 [rul] (는)</td>
<td>는 [rul] (는) / 은 [ul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와 [wa]</td>
<td>와 [wa] / 과 [gwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여 [yo]</td>
<td>여 [yo] / 이여 [iyo]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56 The genitive of the personal pronoun always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:
- 나의* 어머니 [nau-i omoni] my mother
- 우리* 어머니 [uriui omoni] our mother

* 나의 or 우리의, the genitive of the personal pronoun 나 “I” or 우리 “we” lies before its relative word 어머니.

WORD ORDER
LESSON 3

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

57 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into three forms according to the distance between the speaker and the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the speaker:

이 [i] this, these
여기 [yogi] this place

for example:

〇 이 집이 *1 나의 집이다 *2
[i chibi naui chibida] This is my house.

explanation:

*1 이 집 + 이 (어 - demonstrative pronoun 집 - noun 이 - nominative ending)
*2 집 + 이 + 다 [집 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

〇 여기가 *1 나의 고향이다 *2
[yogiga naui kohyang-ida] This is my native place.

explanation:

*1 여기 + 가 (여기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)
*2 고향 + 이 + 다 [고향 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2. The demonstrative pronoun, which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed:

그 [ku] that, those
거기 [kogi] that place

for example:

○ 그 사람 이* 나의 친구다. [ku sarami naui chin-guda] That man is my friend.
that man my friend is

explanation:

* 그 사람 + 이 (그- demonstrative pronoun 사람 - noun 이- nominative ending)

○ 거기가* 그의 고향이다. [kogiga kuui kohyang-ida] That is his native
that place his native place is

explanation:

* 거기 + 가 (거기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)

3. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed:

저 [cho] that, those
저기 [chogi] that place

for example:

○ 저 집 이 나의 집 이다. [cho chibi naui chibida] That is my house.
that house my house is

○ 저기가 그의 고향이다. [chogiga kuui kohyang-ida] That is his native place.
that place his native place is

58 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into two kinds according to the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object:

이 [i] this, these
그 [ku] that, those
저 [cho] that, those

2. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place:
여기 [yogi] this place
거기 [kogi] that place
저기 [chogi] that place

Table of the demonstrative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>distance</th>
<th>something existing in the vicinity of the speaker</th>
<th>something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed</th>
<th>something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>this, [i] these</td>
<td>그 [ku] those</td>
<td>저 [cho] those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>여기 [yogi] this place</td>
<td>거기 [kogi] that place</td>
<td>저기 [chogi] that place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

60 The demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object is used as an adjective and is not declined.

for example:

이 사람 [i saram] this man
그 나무 [ku namuj] that tree
저 마을 [cho maul] that village

explanation:

이, 그, 저 - demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object
사람, 나무, 마을 - noun
61 The demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “that” which indicates an object can be also used substantively.

In this case the demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “that” which indicates the object expresses the meaning of “he”. The declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “he” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being.

ㄱ[ku] he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>ㄱ가[kuga] he</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>ㄱ둘[kdur] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>ㄱ의[kuui] his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>ㄱ에거[kuege] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>ㄱ에게서[kuegeso] by him, from him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>ㄱ로[kuro] to him, as he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>ㄱ와[kuwa] he and, with him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural form ㄱ둘[kudul] “they” of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “he” is formed by attaching the plural ending ㄴ[dul] to the substantively used demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “he”.

62 The declension of the plural form ㄱ둘[kudul] “they” of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun ㄱ[ku] “he” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

กำหนด[kudul] they

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>ㄱ둘 이[kuduri] they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>ㄱ둘 을[kdurul] them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>ㄱ둘 의[kdurui] their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>ㄱ둘 에게[kduerege] them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The plural form 이들 [idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이 [i] “this” is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the demonstrative pronoun 이 [i] “this” which indicates the object and is used substantively. In this case the plural form 이들 [idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이 [i] “this” which indicates the object has the meaning of “these men”.

63 The declension of 이들 [idul] “these men” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>In Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>이들이 [iduri]</td>
<td>these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>이들을 [idurile]</td>
<td>these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>이들의 [idurui]</td>
<td>of these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>이들에게 [idurege]</td>
<td>to these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>이들로 [idullo]</td>
<td>by these men, from these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>이들로 [idullo]</td>
<td>to these men, as these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>이들과 [idulgwa]</td>
<td>these men and, with these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64 The declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place is the same as with a noun which ends in a
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINATIVE</th>
<th>NOMINATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여기 [yogi] this place</td>
<td>여기가 [yogiga] this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>여기를 [yogirul] this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>여기의 [yogiui] of this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>여기에 [yogie] to this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>여기에서 [yogieso] in this place, from this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>여기로 [yogiro] to this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>여기와 [yogiwa] this place and, with this place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINATIVE</th>
<th>NOMINATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거기 [kogi] that place</td>
<td>거기가 [kogiga] that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>거기로 [kogiro] to that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>거기의 [kogiui] of that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>거기에서 [kogieso] in that place, from that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>거기와 [kogiwa] that place and, with that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of the word to be declined</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가 [ga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>물 [rul] (구 [l])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에 [e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에서 [eso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와 [wa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여 [yo], 야 [ya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WORD ORDER**

66 The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:
이사람 [i saram] this man

explanation:
* 이 - adjectively used demonstrative pronoun
The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 이 which indicates
the object lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

67 The attribute always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>잠자는</th>
<th>아이</th>
<th>sleeping child</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chanun</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>child</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
   stem ending
자 + 는 [는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]
The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense
is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다.
The attribute 자는 lies before the word 아이 it refers to.

68 The adverbial modifier usually lies after the subject and
the object.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>우리는</th>
<th>평양을</th>
<th>곧<em>1 방문합니다</em>2</th>
<th>We will visit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>urinun</td>
<td>pyongyang-ul</td>
<td>kot pangmunhamnida</td>
<td>Pyongyang soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
<td>soon visit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
*1 The adverbial modifier 곧 lies after the subject 우리는
and the object 평양을.
*2 방문하다 + 다 [pangmunha da] visit
   stem ending
방문하다 + 뷔니다 [ bü니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final
   ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
LESSON 4

THE VERB

69 The infinitive of the verb in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
<th>explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다 [kada] (go)</td>
<td>가다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다 [oda] (come)</td>
<td>오다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다 [mokda] (eat)</td>
<td>먹다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다 [chuda] (give)</td>
<td>주다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마시다 [masida] (drink)</td>
<td>마시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>풍부하다 [kongbuhada] (learn)</td>
<td>풍부하다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE FORMS OF THE VERB

70 The verb has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

   for example:
   나는 집으로 간다.*
   [nanun chiburo kanda]  I am going home.
   I home to go

   explanation:
* The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.

가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 냈다 [kadala - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 냈다)

The low declarative form 냈다 of the final ending of the verb is attached to the stem 가 of the verb 가다 instead of the ending 냈다 of the infinitive.

The final form 간다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence.

for example:

나는 공장에서 일하고*

I work at the factory and go home.

집으로 간다.

home to go

chiburo kanda

I work at the factory and go home.

explanation:

* The connecting form 일하고 is derived from the infinitive 일하다.

일하 + 다 [ilha da] work

stem ending

일하 + 고 [고 - connecting ending of the verb (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the verb is attached to the stem 일하 of the verb 일하다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 일하고 of the verb 일하다, connects the phrases, 공장에서 일하 - and 집으로 간다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pro-
noun or numeral

for example:

자녀* 아이
[chanun ai] sleeping child

explanation:

* The attributive form 자녀 is derived from the infinitive 자다.

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending
자 + 는 [는 -attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자다 of the verb 자다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.
The attributive form 자녀 of the verb 자다 is added to the noun 아이.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

땀이 비가 오듯* 혔른다.
[ddami piga odut hurunda] The sweat flows as it rains.
the sweat the rain as it comes flows

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 is derived from the infinitive 오다.

오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 듯 [-dropdown -ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]
The ending of the adverbial modifier 듯 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.
The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 of the verb 오다 modifies the verb 혔른다.

비가 오듯 is the expanded adverbial modifier (refer to 227).
THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERB

The final form of the verb is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence. The final form of the verb makes no distinction of person or number. The tense of the final form of the verb is the present.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>내가</td>
<td>우리가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[naega</td>
<td>[uriga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kanda] go.</td>
<td>kanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go.</td>
<td>go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person addressed</td>
<td>너가</td>
<td>너희가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[nega</td>
<td>[nouhiiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kanda]</td>
<td>kanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go.</td>
<td>go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person spoken about</td>
<td>그가</td>
<td>그들이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[kuga</td>
<td>[kuduri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kanda]</td>
<td>kanda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>goes.</td>
<td>go.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanations:

* The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.
가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending
가 + 니다 [nika da] - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERB

The final ending of the verb is the ending of the final form
of the verb.

The final ending of the verb expresses the closing of the sentence.

73 The final ending of the verb can express four moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

내가  간다*.
[naega  kanda] I go.

I

explanation:

* 가  +  다  [ka da] go

stem  ending

가  +  니다  [lda - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 니다)

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신이  갑니까*?
[tangsini  kamnigga] Are you going?

you

explanation:

* 가  +  니까  [ka da] go

stem  ending

가  +  니까 [니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 102)]

갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 니까)

3. The suggestive form

The suggestive form is the mood in which the speaker
suggests to the person addressed that they should do some act together.

for example:

우리 가 가자*.
[kuriga kaja] Let us go!
we let us go

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
  stem ending
가 + 자 [자—low suggestive form of the final
  ending of the verb (refer to 119)]

4. The imperative form

The imperative form is the mood in which the speaker urges the person addressed to do some action.

for example:

너는 가라* !
[nonun kara] You go!
you go!

explanation:
* 가 + 다
  stem ending
가 + 라 [라—low imperative form of the final ending
of the verb (refer to 121)]

74 The final ending of the verb can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는 평양으로 갑니다*
[chonun pyongyang-u ro kamnida] I go to Pyongyang.
I Pyongyang to go

explanation:
* 가 + 다
  stem ending
가 + 빌나 [비나라—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 은)
The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:
나는 평양으로 가오*.
[nanun pyongyang-uro kao]
I go to pyongyang.

I Pyongyang to go

explanation:
* 가 + 다
stem ending
가 + 오 [오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy
The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:
나는 평양으로 간다*.
[nanun pyongyang-uro kanda]
I go to Pyongyang.

I Pyongyang to go

explanation:
* 가 + 다
stem ending
가 + 라다 [라—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 라)
The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

75 The final endings of the verb are subdivided into the final
endings of the declarative form, the final endings of the interrogative form, the final endings of the suggestive form and the final endings of the imperative form.

THE ADJECTIVE

76 The infinitive form of the adjective in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

for example:

푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue

stem  ending

즐겁 + 다 [chulgop da] merry

stem  ending

밝 + 다 [pak da] bright

stem  ending

THE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE

77 The adjective has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

하늘은 [hanurun]  푸르다*. [puru da]

the sky  blue

The sky is blue.

explanation:

* The final form 푸르다 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다.

푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue

stem  ending

푸르 + 다 [다  low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92) ]
The low declarative form 다 of the final ending of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The final form 푸르다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective in Korean corresponds to the form “copula + nominal part of the predicate” in English.

The final form 푸르다 in Korean corresponds to the form “is blue” in English.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

하늘은 푸르고*  
[hanurun purugo  
the sky blue and]

내 마음은 졸겹다.  
[nae maumun chulgopda]  
my heart merry

The sky is blue and my heart is merry.

explanation:

* The connecting form 푸르고 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다
stem ending
푸르 + 고 [고 — connecting ending of the adjective (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 connects the clauses 하늘은 푸르 and 내 마음은 졸겹다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun or numeral
for example:

푸른*  
[purun  hanul]  blue sky
sky

explanation:

* The attributive form 푸른 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.
푸르  +  다
stem  ending
푸르  +  란 [لان-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)]
푸른 (after contracting the syllable 란 and the sound 란)
The attributive ending 란 of the adjective in its present
tense is added to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.
The attributive form 푸른 of the adjective 푸르다 is added
to the noun 하늘.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

달이 밝게*  비친다.
[tari  palge  pichinda]  The moon shines brightly.
the moon brightly shines

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 is derived from the infinitive form 밝다 of the adjective.
밝  +  다  [pak  da]  bright
stem  ending
밝  +  계 [계-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]
The ending of the adverbial modifier 계 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 밝 of the adjective 밝다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.
The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 of the adjective 밝다 modifies the verb 비친다.
THE FINAL FORM
OF THE ADJECTIVE

78 The final form of the adjective is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.
The final form of the adjective makes no distinction of person or number.
The tense of the final form of the adjective is the present.
for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>네가 크다.*</td>
<td>우리가 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[naega kuda]</td>
<td>[uriga kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I big</td>
<td>we big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am big.</td>
<td>We are big.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person addressed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>네가 크다.</td>
<td>너희가 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[nega kuda]</td>
<td>[noluiga kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you big</td>
<td>you big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are big.</td>
<td>You are big.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person spoken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>그가 크다.</td>
<td>그들이 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[kuga kuda]</td>
<td>[kuduri kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he big</td>
<td>they big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He is big.</td>
<td>They are big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* The final form 크다 is derived from the infinitive form 크다 of the adjective.

크 + 다 [ku da] big
크 + 다 (다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE ADJECTIVE

79 The final ending of the adjective is the ending of the final form of the adjective.
The final ending of the adjective expresses the closing of the sentence.

80 The final ending of the adjective can express two moods:

1. The declarative form
   The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

   for example:
   나는 기쁘다*
   [nanun kbbuda] I am glad.
   I glad

   explanation:
   * 기쁘 + 다
   stem ending
   [다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

2. The interrogative form
   The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

   for example:
   당신은 기쁩니다*
   [tangsinun kibbumnigga] Are you glad?
   you glad?
explanation:
* 기쁘다 + 다
    stem      ending
기쁘다 [비나가—most deferential interrogative
form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 104)]
기쁨니다 (after contracting the syllable 받 and the sound 다)

81 The final ending of the adjective can express three degrees
of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form
   The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.
   for example:
   저는 기쁩니다*
   [chonun kibumnida]         I am glad.
   I glad

explanation:
* 기쁘다 + 다
    stem      ending
기쁘다 [비나다—most deferential declarative form
of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]
기쁨니다 (after contracting the syllable 받 and the sound 다)
   The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
   The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.
   for example:
   나는 기뻐요*
   [nanun kibbuyo]         I am glad.
   I glad

explanation:
* 기쁘다 + 다
    stem      ending
3. The low form of courtesy
The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는 기쁘다*  
[nannun kibbuda]  
I am glad.

explanation:
* 기쁘 + 다  
stem ending  
기쁘 + 다 [다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

82 The final endings of the adjective are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

83 The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching a final ending, a connecting ending or an attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 94, 128, 151) to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

〇 여기가 평양입니다*  
[yogiga pyongyang · imnida]  
It is Pyongyang.

this place pyongyang is
explanation:
* 평양 + 이 + 비니다 [평양 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 
(refer to 180) 비니다 - most deferential declarative form
of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
평양이니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound
비)
평양이니다 is the final form of the verbal form of the
noun 평양.

○ 그것은 나요.*
[kugosun nayo]
it
I is

It is me.

explanation:
* 나 + 요 [나 - personal pronoun 요 - middle declarative
form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to
94)]
나요 is the final form of the verbal form of the personal
pronoun 나.

○ 조국은 하나다.*
[chogugun hanada]
fatherland one is

The fatherland is one.

explanation:
* 하나 + 다 [하나 - numeral 다 - low declarative form
of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
하나다 is the final form of the verbal form of the numeral
하나.

○ 저는 기자이고*
[chonun kijaigo
I a journalist am and
이분은 의사입니다.
ibunun uisaimnida
this person a doctor is

I am a journalist, and this is a doctor.

explanation:
* 기자 + 이 + 고 [기자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 고 -
connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]
기자이고 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 기자.

○ 주체의 조국인* [chucheui chogugin
Juche of the fatherland being Korea | Korea, the
frtherland of Juche

explanation:
* 조국 + 이 + 라 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 -
attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]
조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 라)
조국인 is the attributive form of the verbal form of the
noun 조국.

THE DIVISION OF THE VERBAL FORMS OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN
OR NUMERAL

84 The verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral are di-
vided as follows:
1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and
closes the sentence

for example:
조선은 주체의 조국이다.*
Korea is the father-
kine of Juche.

explanation:
* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 -
low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal
form (refer to 94)]
The final form 조국이다 lies at the end of the sentence and
closes the sentence.
2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects the
words or phrases or clauses in a sentence
for example:

저는 로동자이고*  
[chonun rodongjaigo  
I a worker am and

이분은 기사입니다.  
ibunun kisaimnida]  
this person an engineer is

I am a worker, and he is an engineer.

explanation:

* 로동자 + 이 + 고  [로동자-noun 이-exchanging ending  
고-connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 로동자이고  
connects the clauses, 저는 로동자이- and 이분은 기사입니다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun  
or numeral

for example:

영웅의 나라인* 조선  
[yong-ung-ui narain choson]  
hero of land being Korea  
Korea, the heroes’ land

explanation:

* 나라 + 이 + 름 [나라-noun 이-exchanging ending 름-attributive ending of the verbal form(refer to 151)]  

The attributive form 나라인 is added to the noun 조선.

THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERBAL  
FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR  
NUMERAL

85 The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or  
numeral is the form which lies at the end of the sentence  
and closes the sentence.
The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the present.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>저는 영국 사람입니다. [chonun yong-guksaram imnida] I an Englishman am</td>
<td>우리는 영국 사람들입니다. [urinun yong-guksaramdur imnida] we Englishmen are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am an Englishman</td>
<td>We are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person addressed</td>
<td>당신은 영국 사람들입니다. [tangsinun yong-guksaramdur imnida] you an Englishman are</td>
<td>당신들은 영국 사람들입니다. [tangsindurun yong-guksaramdurimnida] you Englishmen are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are an Englishman.</td>
<td>You are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person spoken about</td>
<td>그는 영국 사람입니다. [kunun yong-guksaram imnida] he an Englishman is</td>
<td>그들은 영국 사람들입니다. [kudurun yong-guksaramdurimnida] they Englishmen are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He is an Englishman.</td>
<td>They are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the ending of the final form of the verbal
form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral expresses the closing of the sentence.

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express two moods:

1. The declarative form
The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:
조선은 주체의 조국이다.  
[korean chucheui chogugida]  Korea is the fatherland of Juche.

explanation:
* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 – noun 이 – exchanging ending 다 – low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

2. The interrogative form
The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:
당신은 조선 사람 입니까?  
[tangsinun chosonsaramiminigga]  Are you a Korean?

you a Korean are

explanation:
* 조선 사람 + 이 + 니가 [조선 사람 – noun 이 – exchanging ending 니가 – most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]
조선 사람 입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 니)

135
The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form
   The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

   for example:
   제는 영국사람입니다.  
   [chonun yong-guksaramimnida]  
   I am an Englishman.

   explanation:
   * 영국사람 + 이 + 빌니타 [영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 빌니타 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
   영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 빌)
   The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
   The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

   for example:
   나는 영국사람이오.
   [nanun yong-guksaramio]  
   I am an Englishman.

   explanation:
   * 영국사람 + 이 + 오 [오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
   The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy
   The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.
for example:
나는 영국사람이다.*
[ nanun yong.guksaramida] I am an Englishman.

explanation:
* 영국사람 + 이 + 다 [다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

The final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

LESSON 5
THE DECLARATIVE FINAL
ENDINGS OF THE VERB

90 There are the following declarative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

   습니다 [sumnida]/ㅂ니다 [mnida]

   1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

   for example:
   저는 사과를 먹습니다.*
   [chonun sagwarul moksumnida] I eat an apple.
   I an apple eat

   explanation:
   * 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
     stem ending
   먹 + 습니다 (습니다—most deferential declarative form

137
of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

2) ㅂ니다 [mnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

〇 환영 합니다.  
  [hwanyonghamnida]  
  welcome

welcome!

explanation:

환영하다 + 다 [hwanyongha da] welcome

환영하다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅗ)

환영하다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅗ)

The stem 환영하다 of the verb 환영하다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

〇 그는 편지를 씁니다.*  
  [kunun pyonjirul ssumnida]  
  he a letter writes

He writes a letter.

explanation:

★ 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write

★ 쓰 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

★ 쓰 + ㅂ니다 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㅂ)

★ The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

외 [o] / 소 [so]

1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는 가오.*  
  [nanun kao]  
  I go.

I go.

explanation:
* 가 + 다 | [ka da] | go

stem ending
가 + 오 (오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

2) 소[so] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:
나는 사과를 먹소.* | I eat an apple.
[nanun sagwarul mokso]
I an apple eat

explanation:
* 믹 + 다 | [mok da] | eat

stem ending
믹 + 소 (소 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The stem 믹 of the verb 믹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

3. The low form of courtesy:
다 [da]
The sound 란[n] or the syllable 눈[nun] is placed before this final ending in the present.
The final endings 랐다[nda] and 눌다[nunda] are formed by it.
The final ending 랐다[nda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a vowel.
The final ending 눌다[nunda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a consonant.

1) 랐다[nda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:
나는 주체의 조국인 | I go to Korea, the fatherland of Juche.
[nanun chucheui chogugin]
조선으로 갓다.*
chosonuro kanda]
Korea to go
explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
    stem    ending
가 + 나라 ( 나라—low declarative form of the final ending
    of the verb)
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅏ)
The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowelㅏ.

2) 는다 [nunda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a con-
    sonant)

for example:

그는 밥을 먹는다.*
[kunun pabul mongnunda]   He eats rice.
he    rice     eats

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
    stem    ending
먹 + 는다 (는다—low declarative form of the final ending
    of the verb)
The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄷ.

91 Table of declarative final endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of
the verb which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verb, please re-
fer to the appendix.
THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE ADJECTIVE

There are the following declarative final endings to the adjective:

1. The most deferential form:

습니다 [sumnida] / 뷢니다 [mnida]

1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

저의 마음은 졸겁 습니다.*
choui maumun chulgopsumnida  |  My heart is merry.
my heart  merry

explanation:

* 줄겁  +  니더 [julkop da] merry
  stem ending

judul + 습니다 (습니다 — most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 줄겁 of the adjective 줄겁니다 ends in the consonant ㅂ.

2) 뷢니다 [mnida] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

하늘은 뷢릅니다.*
[hanurun  purumnida]  |  The sky is blue.
the sky  blue

explanation:

* 푸르 + 니더 [puru da] blue
  stem ending

푸르 + 뷢니다 (ביטוי — most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

푸릅니다 (after contracting the syllable 뷢 and the sound ㅂ)

The stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르니다 ends in the vowel ㅡ.

2. The middle form of courtesy:
오 [o]/ 소 [so]

1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

평양은 유장하 오*  
[pyongyang-un ungjianghao]  
Pyongyang magnificent

explanation:

* 음장하 + 다  [ungjiangha da] magnificent
    stem        ending

음장하 + 오 (오 – middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 음장하 of the adjective 음장하다 ends in the vowel 오.

2) 소 [so] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

처 산은 높소*  
[cho sanun nopsso]  
that mountain is high

explanation:

* 높 + 다  [nops da] high
    stem        ending

높 + 소 (소 – middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 높 of the adjective 높다 ends in the consonant 소.

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

조선의 아침은 맛 다*  
[chosonui achimun makda]  
the Korean morning fresh

explanation:

* 맛 + 다  [mak da] fresh
    stem        ending
Table of declarative final endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Remarks:
We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.
For the other declarative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

**THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL**

94 There are the following declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

1. The most deferential form:

   습니다 [sumnida] / 데 변화 [mnida]

1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense)

   for example:
   
   그는 대학생이였습니다.
   [kunun taehaksaengiyotsumnida] | He was a student.
   He a student was

**explanation:**
2) 부니다 [mnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

for example:

저는 영국 사람입니다.*
[chonun yong'guksaramimnida] I am an Englishman.

영국 사람 + 이 + 부니다 [영국 사람 – noun 이 – exchanging ending 부니다 – most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

예 [yo]
This final ending is used in spoken language when a person speaks with a sense of intimacy.

for example:

그는 나의 동무 요.*
[kunun naui tongmuyo] He is my friend.

他 my friend is

explanation:

* 동무 + 요 (동무 – noun 요 – middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

○ 조선은 하나이다.*
[chosonun hanaida] Korea is one.

Korea is one.
explanation:

* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나 - numeral 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the noun, pronoun or numeral to which the final ending of the verbal form is attached ends in a vowel, the exchanging ending 다 can be omitted.

In the final form 하나이다 the numeral 하나 ends in the vowel a. Therefore, 하나다 can be used instead of 하나이다.

95 Table of declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

96 The declarative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

나는 주체의 조국인 [nanun chucheui chogugin] I Juche of the fatherland being

조선으로 갔다*.

chosonuro kanda]

Korea to go

I go to Korea, the fatherland of Juche.
**Explanation:**

가 + 다 [ka da] go

*stem ending*  
가 + 냐다 [nada] low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)  
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 냐)

The final form 간다 of the verb 가다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

97 The declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

**For example:**

평양은 아름답습니다.  
[pyongyang un arumdasumni] beautiful  
Pyongyang is beautiful.

**Explanation:**

* 아름답다 + 다 [arumda da] beautiful

*stem ending*  
아름답 + 습니다 (습니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 아름답습니다 of the adjective 아름답 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

98 The declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

**For example:**

저는 학생 대표입니다.  
[chonun haksengdaeppowimni] I am a student delegate.

**Explanation:**

* 학생 대표 + 이 + 냐다 [학생 대표 이 냐다] - exchanging ending  

*most deferential form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)*
학생대표입니다 (after contracting the syllable ো and the sound ㅂ)

The final form 학생대표입니다 of the verbal form of the noun 학생대표 is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

LESSON 6

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

99 The interrogative pronouns are divided as follows:

1. The interrogative pronoun indicating a person

1) 누구 [nugu] who

누구 is substantively used.

for example:
 당신은 누구입니다? [tangsinun nuguimnigga] who are you?

explanation:
* 누구 + 이 +ㅂ니가 [누구=interrogative pronoun 이=exchanging ending ㅂ니가=most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form(refer to 106)]
누구입니가 (after contracting the syllable ো and the sound ㅂ)

2) 아무 [amu] anyone; any

아무 “anyone” is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:
О 아무 도*1 그것을 모르니가*2? [amudo kugosul morumnigga] anyone also it not knows?
Does nobody know it?

explanation:
*1 아무 + 도 [아무=interrogative pronoun 도=auxiliary ending (refer to 185)]
모르 다 [moru da] not know
stem ending
모르 뭐니까 [ 뭐니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to 102)]
모름니까 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound 나)

〇 아무 사람도* 그것을
[amu saramdo kugosul
any man also it
모름니까? not knows?
모름니까?

explanation:
* 아무 사람 + 도
(아무—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 도—auxiliary ending)
The adjectively used interrogative pronoun 아무 lies before
the word 사람 it refers to.

2. the interrogative pronoun indicating a thing

무엇 [muot] what
무엇 is substantively used.

for example:
것은 무엇입니까*?
[igosun muosimnigga]
this what is?

What is this?

explanation:
* 무엇 + 이 + 뭐니가 (무엇—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending 뭐니가—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
무엇입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 나)

3. The interrogative pronoun indicating quantity

1) 얼마 [olma] how much, how many

for example:
것은 얼마입니까*?
[kugosun olma imnigga]
it how much is?

How much is it?
explanation:
* 얼마 + 이 + 비니까 (얼마—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending 비니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
얼마입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 비)

2) 몇 [myot] how many

is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

〇 이것은 몇 입니까?  ❘ How many are there?
  [igosun myochimnigga]
  this  how many is?

explanation:
* 몇 + 이 + 비니까 (몇—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending 비니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
몇 입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 비)

〇 그들은 몇 사람 입니까?  ❘ How many people are they?
[kudurun myot saramimnigga]  they  how many man are?

explanation:
* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + 비니까

(몇—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 이—exchanging ending 비니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
몇 사람 입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 비)

4. The interrogative pronoun indicating a place
어디 [odi] which place

is substantively used.

for example:
당신은 어디에 갑니까?  
Where are you going?

explanation:
*1 어디에 [tangsinun odie]  
interrogative pronoun 에—dative ending
*2 가 + 다 [ka da] go
갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

5. The interrogative pronoun indicating time
언제 [onje] which time
언제 is substantively used.

for example:
그는 언제 옴니까?
[kunun onje omnigga] When is he coming?
he at which time comes?

explanation:
* the interrogative pronoun 언제 is in the dative form.
Accordingly the dative ending 에 of the interrogative pronoun 언제 was omitted. This is called the absolute case.

100 Table of interrogative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>누구 [nugu]</th>
<th>who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>아무 [amu]</td>
<td>anyone; any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>무엇 [muot]</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantity</td>
<td>얼마 [olma]</td>
<td>how much, how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>몇 [myot]</td>
<td>how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>어디 [odi]</td>
<td>which place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>언제 [onje]</td>
<td>which time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

101 The declension of the interrogative pronoun is the same as with a noun (refer to 26; 27).

THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

102 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:
   습니까 [sumnigga]/ 니까 [mnigga]

   1) 습니까 [sumnigga] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

   * 빡 + 다 [mok da] eat

   stem ending

   Example:  
   그는 사과를 민습니까? [kunun sagwarul moksumnigga]
   he the apple eats?

   explanation:
   The stem 빡 of the verb 민다 ends in the consonant -.

   2) 니까 [mnigga] (when the stem of the verb ends in vowel)

   Example:  
   그는 편지를 쓰니까? [kunun pyonjirul ssumnigga]
   he the letter writes?

   explanation:
* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write
stem  ending
쓰 + 뭐니까 (ufigen interogative form of the final ending of the verb)
(merge with the sound 변) (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the soundnu)
The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel-.

2. The middle form of courtesy:
나 [na]
This final ending is used when a man asks something with friendly feeling.
for example:
그는 자나*?
[kunun chana]  he  sleeps?
Is he asleep?

explanation:
* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem  ending
자 + 나 (나-middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:
느냐 [nunya]
for example:
동무야 알고 느냐*!
[tongmuya algennunya]  Comrade! Do you know!
know?

explanation:
* 알 + 다 [al da] know
stem  ending
알 + 것 + 느냐(것-low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
The ending of the future tense 것 expresses here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Remarks:**
We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other interrogative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

**The Interrogative Final Endings of the Adjective**

1. The most deferential form:
   你好 [sunnigga] /你好 [mnigga]
   1) 你好 [sunnigga] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant*)
   for example:
   당신의 마음은 즐겁습니다吗？
   [tangsinui maumun chulgop sunnigga] Is your heart merry?
   your heart merry?

**Explanation:**
* 즐겁다 [julgop da] merry
  stem ending
  즐겁다 +你好 (你好 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)
The stem 줄집 of the adjective 줄집다 ends in the consonant 르.

2) 르 니까 [mnigga] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hanurun</th>
<th>purumnigga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the sky</td>
<td>blue?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* 르 + 니까 (verbs and the sound 르)

The stem 르 of the verb 르다 ends in the vowel-.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

ㄴ가 [nga]

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nalssiga</th>
<th>nabbun-nga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the weather</td>
<td>bad?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* 나 + 르가 (verbs and the sound 나)

3. The low form of courtesy:

1) 나 [nya]

This final ending is used for the adjective without any ending of the tense.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nonun</th>
<th>kibbunya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>glad?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* 기쁘 + 다  [kibbu da] glad
  stem  ending
기쁘 + 는 (나—low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

2) 느냐 [nunya]
This final ending is used for the adjective with the ending of the tense.

for example:
너는 얼마나 기쁘겠냐?  [nonun olmana kibbugennunya]
How glad are you?
you how glad

explanation:
* 기ribly + 다  [kibbu da] glad
  stem  ending
기ribly + 것 + 느냐 (것—ending of the future tense 느냐—
  low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The ending of the future tense 것 has here not the meaning
of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

## 105 Table of interrogative final endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>습니까/ 난니까 [sumnigga] [mnigga]</td>
<td>느가 [nga]</td>
<td>1) 느 [nya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) 느냐 [nunya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**remarks:**
We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings
of the adjective which are frequently used.
For the other interrogative final endings of the adjective,
please refer to the appendix.
THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

There are the following interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

1. The most deferential form:
   습니까 [sumnigga] / 비니까 [mnigga]
   1) 습니까 [sumnigga] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense)

   for example:
   그는 대학생이었습니까?  
   [kunun taehaksaeng. iyossunnigga]  
   he a student was ?

   explanation:
   * 대학생 + 이 + 었다 + 습니까 (대학생~noun 이~ exchanging ending 었다~ending of the past tense 습니까~most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

   2) 비니까 [mnigga] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

   for example:
   그는 영국사람입니까?  
   [kunun yong.guksaramimnigga]  
   he an Englishman is ?

   explanation:
   * 영국사람 + 이 + 입니까 (영국사람~noun 이~ exchanging ending 입니까~most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

   영국사람 입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 입)

2. The middle form of courtesy:
   냐가 [nga]
for example:
이 꽃은 조선의 진달래인가?
[이 gogochun chosonui chindallaeginnamon]
this flower Korea of the azalia is?

| Is this flower | the Korean azalia? |

explanation:
* 진달래 + 이 + 라가 (진달래 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라가 - middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
진달래인가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 라)

3. The low form of courtesy:
1) 냐 [nya]
This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral without any ending of the tense.

for example:
너는 누구 냐?
[noun nugu nya]
you who are?

Who are you?

explanation:
* 누구 + 냐 (누구 - interrogative pronoun 냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

2) 느냐 [nunya]
This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral with the ending of the tense.

for example:
그것이 언제였 느냐?
[kogosi onjeyonunnya]
it which time was?

When was it?

explanation:
* 언제 + 였 + 느냐 (언제 - interrogative pronoun 였 - ending of the past tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of
Table of interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 당신까 / 비니까 | 날가 | 1) 나[nya] 
| [sumnigga] / [mnigga] | [n-ga] 
| 2) 느냐 | [nunya] |

Remarks:
We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used. For the other interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

108 The interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

For example:
당신은 어디에 갑니까?
[tangsinun odie kamnigga]
you which place to go?
Where are you going?

Explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 비니까 (비니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
감니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 비)
The final form 감니까 in the sentence is the predicate.
and it lies at the end of the sentence.

The interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:
당신의 마음은 출결습니까?  
[jangsinui maumun chulgopsumnigga]  
Your heart merry?

explanation:
* 출결 + 다 [julgop da] merry.
stem ending
출결 + 습니까 (습니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)
The final form 출결습니까 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

110 The interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:
그는 누구입니까?  
[kunun nuguimnigga]  
who is he?

explanation:
* 누구 + 이 + 바니까 (누구—noun 이—exchanging ending 바니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
누구입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 바)
The interrogative final form 누구입니까 of the verbal form of the noun 누구 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of sentence.
The position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence is as follows:

1. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the subject, it usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

   for example:
   누가* 옴니가?
   [nuga omnigga]  Who comes?
   who comes?

   explanation:
   * 누 + 가 (가—nominative ending)

2. The final form of the verbal form of the interrogative pronoun is formed by attaching the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral to the interrogative pronoun.

   for example:
   [nonun nungunya]
   who are?

   explanation:
   * 누가 + 나 (누가—interrogative pronoun 나—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

3. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the object, it lies between the subject and the predicate.

   for example:
   당신은 무엇을* 합니가?
   [tangsinun muosul hamnigga]
   you what do you do?

   explanation:
   * 무엇 + 을 (무엇—interrogative pronoun 을—accusative ending)
The object 무엇을 lies between the subject 당신은 and the predicate 합니까.

4. When the interrogative pronoun is used as an attribute, it lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

그들은 몇 사람입니까? [kudurun myotsaramimnigga] they how many man are?  
How many people are they?

explanation:

* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + 푼니까 (몇−interrogative pronoun 사람−noun이−exchanging ending 푼니까−most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
몇 사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 푼)

112 The form of address usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

박동무, 나는 정가장에 가오. [paktongmu nanun chong.go.jang.e kao] comrade Pak I the station to go  
Comrade Pak, I am going to the station.

explanation:

* 가. + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + 오 오−middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

113 An interjection usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

아*, 나의 고향이여! [a naui kohyang.iyo] ah my native place!  
Ah, my native place!

explanation:

* The interjection 아 lies at the beginning of the sentence.
LESSON 7

THE NUMERALS

114 The Korean language has a double series of numerals:

1. The series of pure Korean numbers

2. The series of numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters

115 The cardinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>substantival</th>
<th>adjectival</th>
<th>substantival, adjectival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나 [hana]</td>
<td>한 [han]</td>
<td>일 [il]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>두 [tul]</td>
<td>두 [tu]</td>
<td>이 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넷 [net]</td>
<td>네 [ne]</td>
<td>사 [sa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>오 [o]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>륵 [ryuk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>칠 [chil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>팔 [pal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>구 [ku]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>십 [sip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>열한 [yolhan]</td>
<td>열한 [yolhan]</td>
<td>십일 [sibil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>열두 [yoldul]</td>
<td>열두 [yoldu]</td>
<td>십이 [sibi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>열세 [yolse]</td>
<td>열세 [yolse]</td>
<td>십삼 [sipsam]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>열넷 [yolnet]</td>
<td>열넷 [yolne]</td>
<td>십사 [sipsa]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eleven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>숫자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is advisable to read the numeral in the pure Korean numbers as much as possible.

for example:
19 열아홉 [yorahop] nineteen
111 백열하나 [paegyolhana] a hundred and eleven
1007 천일곱 [chonilgop] a thousand and seven

The declension of the numeral is just the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27).

116 The ordinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫번째*1 [chotbonjae],</td>
<td>제일*2 [cheil]</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫째 [chotjae]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Singular
*2 Plural
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>두번재 [tubonjjae], 돌재 [tuljjae]</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세번재 [sebonjjae], 세재 [setjjae]</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네번재 [nebonjjae], 네재 [netjjae]</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯(번)재 [tatsot(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯(번)재 [yosot(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱(번)재 [ilgop(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟(번)재 [yodol(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉(번)재 [ahop(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열(번)재 [yol(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열한(번)재 [yolhan(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>eleventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열두(번)재 [yoldu(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무(번)재 [sumu(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>thirteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서른(번)재 [sorun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>fourteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마흔(번)재 [mahun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>fifteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십(번)재 [swin(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>sixteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여순(번)재 [yesun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>seventeenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일흔(번)재 [ilhun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>eighteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여든(번)재 [yodun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>nineteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아흔(번)재 [ahun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>twentieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백(번)재 [paeck(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>hundredth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation:**
1. […jjae] is a suffix. It means “order” and is attached to the pure Korean cardinal number in order to form the corresponding pure Korean ordinal number.
2. [che] is a prefix. It means “order” and is put before the cardinal number in order to form the corresponding ordinal number.
THE COUNTING WORD

117 The numbers are connected to a counting word, and then the counting word lies after the main word. These counting words are different according to the objects to be counted. They have the meaning of “piece” in English.

The counting words are:

① 개 [gae] “piece” (for objects)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>two chairs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>의자 두 개</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[uija tugae]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair two pieces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

② 명 [myong] “person” (for persons)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>two students</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>대학생 두 명</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[taehaksaeng tumyong]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student two persons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

③ 분 [bun] “person” (for expressing respect)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>two teachers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>선생 두 분</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sonsaeng tubun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher two persons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

④ 마리 [mari] “animal” (for animals)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>two oxen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>소 두 마리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[so tumari]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ox two animals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. 권 [gwon] “book”, “volume” (for books)

for example:
사전 두권
[sajon tugwon]  two dictionaries
dictionary two books

6. 장 [jang] “sheet” (for papers, roofing-tiles or bricks)

for example:
중이 두장
[jongi tujang]  two sheets of paper
paper two sheets

7. 볼 [bol] “suit” (for clothes)

for example:
옷 두벌
[ot tubol]  two suits of clothes
clothes two suits

8. 대 [dae] “piece” (for machines, cars or airplanes)

for example:
비행기 두 대
[pilhaeng-gi tudaе]  two airplanes
airplane two pieces

9. 척 [chok] “ship” (for ships)

for example:
배 세척
[pae sechok]  three ships
ship three ships

10. 채 [chaе] “house” (for houses)

for example:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>英語</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>집</td>
<td>한 캐스</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한자</td>
<td>[chip hanhachae]</td>
<td>one house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>英語</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>연필</td>
<td>네자루</td>
<td>four pencils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>윗</td>
<td>pencil four pieces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>英語</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>신</td>
<td>한 팔레</td>
<td>a pair of shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>윗</td>
<td>shoes one pair</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 문 [mun] “gun” (for guns)

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>英語</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>대포</td>
<td>열문</td>
<td>ten guns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>윗</td>
<td>gun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14 根 [guru] “tree” (for trees)

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한자</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>英語</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>나무</td>
<td>根두구루</td>
<td>two trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>윗</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE INCOMPLETE NOUN

118 The Korean language has the incomplete noun. An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning and can express it only when another word lies before it as an attribute.
for example:

- 선생 두분* [sonsang tubun] two teachers
- 우리는 반드시 승리할것이다.* [urinun pandusi sungrihalgosida] we surely win.

explanation:
* The adjectival numeral 두 lies before the incomplete noun 분 as an attribute.
* 승리하 + 다 [sungriha da] win

- 동 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense (refer to 147) 것으로 -incomplete noun 되 -exchanging ending
- 다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form

우리한것이다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄹ)

- 그가 올수 있다* [kuga olsu itda] he can come.

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come

- 오 + 수 있다 (오 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 수 -incomplete noun 있다-verb)

움수 있다 [다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verb] after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ㄹ
THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERB

There are the following suggestive final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

ㅂ시다 [psida]

for example:
영화를 봅시다.*
[yonghwarul popsida]
the film see let us

explanation:
* 보 + 다 [po da] watch
stem ending
보 + ㅂ시다 (ㅂ시다—most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)
봄 시 다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound ㅂ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

세 [se]

This final ending is used in written language.

for example:
오전에 가세.*
[ojone kase]
the morning in go let us

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 세 (세—middle suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)
3. The low form of courtesy:

자[ja]

for example:

○ 미제를 남
the US imperialists south

조선에서 돌아내자*!
josoneso moranæja]
Korea from drive out let us

Let us drive the
US imperialists
out of south
Korea!

explanation:
*t 돌아내 + 다 [moranæ da] drive out
stem ending
 돌아내 + 자(자—low suggestive form of the final ending
of the verb)

○ 여성들의 권리를 옹호하자* !
the women of the right defend let us

explanation:
* 옹호하 + 다 [onghohâ da] defend
stem ending
옹호하 + 자(자—low suggestive form of the final ending
of the verb)

120 Table of suggestive final endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비시다[psida]</td>
<td>셰 [se]</td>
<td>자[ja]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such suggestive final endings
of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other suggestive final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

THE IMPERATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

121 There are the following imperative final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

صبسي오 [sipsio]
This final ending is used when the speaker holds the person addressed in high esteem.

for example:

בְּבַלְּיָוصبסיו
[bballi osipsio]  
quickly come!  

Come quickly!

explanation:

*오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 심시오 (صبسي오 – most deferential imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

시오 [sio]
This final ending is used both in spoken and written Korean.

for example:

어서 앉으시오*
[oso anjusio]  
please sit down!  

Please, sit down!
explanation:
* 앉 + 다 [an da] sit down
stem ending
앉 + 오 + 시오 (으 - link vowel 시오 - middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:
라 [ra]

for example:
별리 오라.*
[bballi orara] quickly come!

explanation:
*오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 라 (라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>심시오 (sipsio)</td>
<td>시오 [sio]</td>
<td>라 [ra]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such imperative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other imperative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

123 The suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence
is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:
미제를 남조선
[mijerul namjoson
the US imperialists south Korea
에서 물아내자.*
eso moranaeja]
from drive out let us

explanation:
*물아내다 [moranae da] drive out
stem ending
물아내자 (자 – low suggestive form of the final ending of
the verb)
The suggestive final form 물아내자 of the verb 물아내다 in
the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the
sentence.

124 The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:
핵무기를 철피하라.*
[haengmugirul cholpehara] the nuclear weapon abolish!

explanation:
* 철폐하다 [cholpeha da] abolish
stem ending
철폐하다 (라 – low imperative form of the final ending of
the verb)
The imperative final form 철폐하다 of the verb 철폐하다 in
the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the
sentence.

125 The adjectival cardinal number lies before the word
it refers to.
for example: 열다홉살 nineteen years old

**Explanation:**
The adjectival cardinal number 열다홉 lies before the word 살 it refers to.

**Lesson 8**

**THE ADVERB**

According to their meaning or function adverbs in Korean fall into the following categories:

1. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of an action.
These adverbs denote the quality of an action, the manner in which an action is performed or give a quantitative characteristic of an action or a quality. These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify.

for example:

있어[kipi] deeply
높이[nopi] highly
넓이[noll] widely
반가이[pan gai] gladly
천천히[chonchoni] slowly

점점히[himggot] with all

2. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of a state.
These adverbs are very closely connected with the ad-
jectives which they modify.

for example:
대단히 [taedani] very 졸 [chom] a little
아주 [aju] very 약간 [yakgan] a little
사당히 [sangdang-i] fairly 빗 [ggae] fairly
거의 [koui] nearly 이리 [iri] so; thus

3. Adverbs which are related to the sentence as a whole.

These adverbs are very closely connected with sentences as a whole.

These adverbs denote such modality as conviction, assumption, surmise, doubt and will.

for example:
물론 [mullon] of course 만일 [manil] if, when
결코 [kyolko] never 비록 [pirok] although
정말 [chongmal] indeed 도대체 [todaechi] on earth
사실 [sasil] really 응당 [ungdang] naturally
만약 [manyak] if, when

4. Adverbs which include words expressing both onomatopoetic and mimetic words

These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify. Besides, they are in close relation to the nouns and are used as the attribute or predicate in sentences.

for example:
쿵 [kung] bang 꽉 [kwang] bounce
꼬끼오 [ggoggio] 하하 [haha] ha ha
cock-a-doodle-doo 몽게 몽게 [munggemungge] densely

5. Connecting adverbs
These adverbs connect some parts of a sentence.

for example:
및 [mit] and 
또한 [ddohan] also
겹 [kyom] and concurrently

6. Adverbs of negation
These adverbs lie mainly before verbs the meaning of which they deny.
아니 [ani] / 안 [an] not (negation without condition and cause)
못 [mot] not (negation with condition and cause)

Adverbs have diverse lexical meaning and, besides, differ from each other in their structure. Some of them are single words whereas others are derivatives.

1. Single adverb:
for example:
잘 [chal] good; often 
호소 [momso] personally
매우 [maeu] very

2. Derivatives:
These are formed by attaching 오 [i] or 히 [hi] to the root of the adjective.

1) By attaching the suffix 오 [i]

for example:
깊 [kipi] deeply

explanation:
깊 + 오 [kip da] deep
root ending
깊 + 오 (으) - suffix

177
The adverb 곧이 is formed by attaching the suffix 이 to the root 곧 of the adjective 곧다.

2) By attaching the suffix 뭐[hi] for example:

勇 高 뭐 [yong·gami] bravely

**explanation:**

勇가 + 뭐 + 다 [yong·gami ha da] brave

root suffix ending

勇가 + 뭐 (休み - suffix)

The adverb 뭐 is formed by attaching the suffix 뭐 to the root 뭐 of the adjective 뭐하다.

THE CONNECTING FORM OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

128 The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form, the ending of which is used as a conjunction.

The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching the connecting ending to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the noun, pronoun or numeral. The following are the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

129 1. The coordinative connecting endings:

The coordinative connecting endings connect grammatically equivalent units.
The coordinative connecting endings are divided into three kinds:

1) The copulative connecting endings:
   The copulative connecting endings connect equal units.

(1) 고[go]
   This connecting ending is used in order to express the simple linking and the linking of chronological order.

for example:
○ 먹 고*1 입는*2 문제 [mok go imnun munje] eating and dressing question
   the question of food and clothes
   
   explanation:
   *1 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
       stem ending
   *2 입 + 다 [ip da] dress
       stem ending

○ 조선 사람은 슬기롭고*1 용감한*2 민족이다. [chosonsaramun sulgiropgo
   the Korean wise and
   용 감 한*2 민족이다.
   yong gamhan minjogida]
   brave nation is
   
   explanation:
   *1 슬기롭 + 다 [sulgirop da] wise
       stem ending
   *2 용감한 + 다 [yong gamha da] brave
       stem ending

The Koreans are a wise and brave nation.

its present tense(refer to 147)

its present tense(refer to 149)
음감한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 라)

〇 맑고 푸른 하늘
[malgo purun hanul]
clear and blue sky

explanation:

*1 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear

스템 ending

菖 + 고 (고 - copulative connecting ending)

*2 푸른 + 다 [puro da] blue

스템 ending

菖 + 다 (菖 - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

푸른 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound 라)

〇 비료는 쌀이 고*
[piryonun ssarigo
the fertilizer rice is and

쌀눈 곧 공산주의다.
ssarun kot kongsanju-uidaj
rice namely communism is

explanation:

*쌀 + 이 + 고 (쌀 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 고 - copulative

connecting ending)

(2) 며[myo], 며서[myonso]

These connecting endings are used in order to express a simple link.

for example:

〇 소년 단원들이
[soneyon danwonduri
Children’s Union members

노래를 부르며*
[noraerul purumyo
a song sing and

Children’s Union members march on the street, singing a song.
거리를 행진한다.
korirul  haengjinhanda]
street    march

explanation:
* 부르 + 다  [puru da] sing

stem    ending
부르 + 며 (며—copulative connecting ending)

○ 그는 시인이며* 작곡가이다.  He is a poet
[kunun si·nimyo  chakgokgaida]
he  a poet and composer is

explanation:
* 시인 +이 + 며(시인—noun 이—exchanging ending
며—copulative connecting ending)

○ 로동자이면서*  Comrade Kim, a worker
[rodongjaemyonso  a worker is and
공장대학생인 concurrently a university-
kongjangdaehaksaeng·in level factory
김동무  김동무]
college student being
Kim comrade

explanation:
* 로동자+이+면서(로동자—noun 이— exchanging ending
면서—copulative connecting ending)

131 2) The adversative connecting endings:
The adversative connecting endings are used to con-
nect two adversative units.

(1) 지만[jiman]  We don’t want
우리는 전쟁을 바라지 the war, but
[urinun  chonjaeng·ul paraji  want
we  the war]

for example:  never fear it.
많지만** 절코 전쟁을
anchiman kyolko chonjaeng ul
not but surely the war
두려워하지 않는다.*
turyowohaji annunda]
fear not

explanation:
* 바라+ 다 [para da] want
  stem ending
  바라+지 않다 [지 connecting ending of negation (refer to
     139) 않다 verb]
  바라+지 않+지만 (지만 adversative connecting ending)
*2 두려워하+ 다 [turyowohaj da] fear
  stem ending
  두려워하+지 않다 (지 connecting ending of negation
     않다 verb)
  두려워하+지 않+한다 (한다 low declarative form of the
     final ending of the verb)

(2) 데[nde]
데 denotes the present tense.
This connecting ending is used in the verbal form of
the noun, pronoun or numeral without ending of the
tense and in the adjective without ending of the tense.

for example
그는 로동자인데*
kunun rodongjainde
he a worker is but
공 장
kongjang
a university-level factory
dae hakan
college student is

explanation:
* 로동자+이+데 로동자 noun 이 exchanging ending 데

He is a worker, but
a student at a univer-
sity-level factory
college.
3) The disjunctive connecting ending:

(1) 나[na], 둘[dun]
These connecting endings are used in pairs, but they can also be used alone.

for example:

눈이 오나* 비가 오나*
[nuni ona piga ona
snow comes or rain comes or
 언제나 초소를 지키는 우리
onjena chosorul chikinun uri
always the post defending our
인민군 군인들
inmin-gun gunindul
People’s Army soldiers

the soldiers of our
People’s Army who
always defend the
post whether it snows
or rains

explanation:
* 오 + 나 [o da] come
come
stem: ending
오 + 나 (나—disjunctive connecting ending)

들[dun] can be used instead of 나[na].

for example:

눈이 오든 비가 오든
[nuni odun piga odun
snow comes or rain comes or
whether it snows or
rains

(2) 둘지[dunji]
This connecting ending is used in pairs, but it can also be used alone.

for example:
네가 가든지*1 내가  
[naega kadunji nega]  
I go or you  
가든지*1 하여야 한다.*2  
kadunji hayoya handa]  
go or must  
I or you must go.

explanation:
*1 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + 든지(든지 – disjunctive connecting ending)  
*2 하 + 다 [ha da] do  
stem ending  
하+여야 하다 [여야 – connecting ending of condition(refer to 134) 하다 – verb]  
하+여야 하+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 – low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)  
하여야 한다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)  

133 2. The subordinate connecting endings:  
The subordinate connecting endings are divided as follows:

134 1) The connecting endings of condition:  
These endings connect subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the condition for the latter.

(1) 면[myon]  
for example:  
래일 남씨가 좋으면*1  
[rail nalssiga choumyon]  
tomorrow the weather good when  
우리는 출발 하겠다.*2  
[urinun chulbalhagetda]  
we start shall  
When the weather is fine tomorrow, we shall start.
explanation:

*₁ 좋 + 다 [chota] good
   stem ending
   좋 + 오 + 면 (으→link vowel 면→connecting ending
               of condition)

*₂ 출발하+다 [chulbalha da] start
   stem ending
   출발하+겠+다 (겠→ending of the future tense 달→low
               declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) 아야[aya] / 어야[oya] / 여야[yoya]

These endings express indispensable condition.
아야[aya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective
or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has
the vowel ᵏ[a], ᵋ[ya] or ᵔ[o] in its last syllable.

for example:
   나가 + 다 [naga da] go out
   stem ending
   나가+아야 (아야→connecting ending of condition)
   나가야 (after contracting the syllables 가[ga] and 아[a])

어야[oya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective
or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has
the vowel ᵏ[o], ᵃ[yo], ᵏ[u], ᵍ[u] or ᵋ[i] in its last syllable.

for example:
   먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
   stem ending
   먹 + 어야 (어야→connecting ending of condition)

여야[yoya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective
or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in
the vowel ᵍ[i], ᵍ[ae], ᵍ[e], ᵍ[oe], ᵏ[wi], ᵏ[ui] or
the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:
   공부하+다 [kongbuha da] study
   stem ending
for example:

너는 열심히 공부 하여야*  
(nonun yolsimi kongbuhayoya)
study hard only when study
시험에 합격할 수 있다.  
sihome hapgyokalsu itda]
to exam pass can

only when you

"only when studying"

2) The connecting endings of cause:
The connecting endings of cause connect the subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the cause for the latter.

(1) 뿡로[muro]

for example:

비가 오므로* 나는  
[piga omuro nanun]
the rain comes because I
우산을 가지고 간다.  
[usanul kajigo kanda]
the umbrella take

Because it rains, I

"because it下雨"

These connecting endings mainly express the reason.

for example:
Look after your health because it is very cold!

Explanation:
* 출 + 나 [chup da] cold
stem ending
추 + 우 + 니[(나—connecting ending of cause) after exchanging the sound 뷄 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

니가 [nigga] can be used instead of 니 [ni].

For example:
추우니가 [chu-unigga] cold because

Explanation:
출 + 나 [chup da] cold
stem ending
추 + 우 + 니가[(니가—connecting ending of cause) after exchanging the sound 뷄 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

(3) 더니[doni]
This connecting ending expresses the reason or cause.

For example:
그는 열심히 공부해서니*1
[kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni he diligently studied as 성공하였다*2.
song 'gonghayotda] succeeded

As he studied diligently, he succeeded.
3) The connecting endings of order:

These endings are used to express that some acts occur in order.

(1) 다 [da], 다가 [daga]

These connecting endings are mainly used with the verb.
They express that an action is discontinued and followed by another action.

For example:

그는 책을 [kunun chaegul]
he the book
보다*
poda
to read stopping
나갔다.
nagat-da]
went out

He stopped reading the book and went out.

For example:

보다가 [podaga] to read stopping

다가 [daga] can be used instead of 다 [da].
explanation:
보 + 다 [po da] read
stem ending
보 + 다가 (다가 - connecting ending of order)
(2) 자[ja]
This connecting ending is mainly used with the verb. 
It expresses that an action is followed by another action.

for example:
비가 오 자*1  
[piga oja]
the rain came immediately
어두워졌다*2  
oduwojytada]
dark got

explanation:
*1 오 + 다 [oda] come
stem ending
오 + 자 (자 - connecting ending of order)
*2 어둠 + 다 [odup da] dark
stem ending
어두울 + 우 + 어 + 지다 [(어 - connecting ending of method or means 지다 - verb which is used as an auxiliary) after exchanging the sound 우 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]
어두울 + 위 + 지 + 다 [(지 - stem 다 - ending) after contracting the syllables 지 and 어]
어두울 + 위 + 지 + 였 + 다 (았 - ending of the past tense 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
어두워졌다 (after contracting the syllables 지 and 였)

137 4) The connecting endings of method or means

아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]
아[a] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vow-
el ㅏ[a], ㅥ[ya] or ㅗ[o] in its last syllable.

어요 is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅗ[o], ㅢ[yo], ㅑ[u], ㅓ[i] or ㅏ[a] in its last syllable.

어요 is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel ㅏ[i], ㅐ[ae], ㅔ[e], ㅚ[oe], ㅟ[wi], ㄴ[ui] or the syllable 하[ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

〇 해가  stopwatch 오후 다.*2 The sun rises.
   [haega sosa orunda]
   the sun going up rises

explanation:

*1, 속  + 다 [sot da] go up
    stem ending
 속 + 아 (아—connecting ending of method or means)

*2, 오르 + 다[oru da] rise
    stem ending
 오르+ㄴ다(ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
 오른다(after contracting the syllable 둘 and the sound ㄴ)

〇 반제련대성, [panjeryongdaessong
anti-imperialist solidarity
평화와 친선을 위하여* pyonghawa chinsunul wihayo]
peace and friendship for

explanation:

* 위하 + 다 [wiha da] serve
    stem ending
 위하 + 여(여—connecting ending of method or means)

138 5) The connecting endings of purpose or intention
(1) 르[ryo], 르고[ryogo], 자고[jago]
These endings express intention.

for example:

하자고* 결심하면
[ha jago kyolsimhamyon
to do determines if
못해 놀
motaenael
not able to finish
일이 없다.
iri opda]
work there is not

explanation:

* 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending
하 + 자고(자고—connecting ending of aim or intention)

(2) 르(ro)
This ending expresses purpose.

for example:

나는 공부하려*
[nanun kongbuha]o
I in order to study
학교에 간다.
hakgyoe [kanda]
school to go

explanation:

* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
stem ending
공부하 + 르(러—connecting ending of purpose or intention)

139 6) The connecting ending of negation

지[iji]
This ending is connected to [anta] “not”, [motada] “cannot” or [malda] “not” and is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective.

It expresses an action or situation which is denied.

The word with 지[ji] becomes a part of the sentence together with [anta] “not”, [motada] “cannot” or [malda] “not”.

for example:

푸른 하늘을 더럽히지 말라*! | Don’t pollute the blue sky!

the blue sky pollut not!

explanation:

* 더럽히다 [toropi da] pollute

stem ending

더럽히지 말다 (지−connecting ending of negation

말다−verb which is used as an auxiliary)

더럽히지 말 + 다

stem ending

더럽히지 말 + 라 (라−low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>classification</th>
<th>connecting ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>(1) 고 [go]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 며 [myo], 면서 [myonso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copulative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversative</td>
<td>(1) 지만 [jiman]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 넌테 [nde]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disjunctive</td>
<td>(1) 나 [na], 든 [dun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 든지 [dunji]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subordinative</td>
<td>condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) 면[myon] (2) 이야[aya]/어ยาย[oya]/여야[yoya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**
We have indicated here only such connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are often used.

For the other connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.
The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the unit to be connected.

for example:
조선 사람 은 술기름 고 *
[choson saramun sulgiropgo]
the Korean wise and
용감한 민족이 다.
yong.gamhan minjogida]
brave nation is

The Koreans are a wise and brave nation.

explanation:
*The connecting form 술기름 고 of the adjective 술기름다
lies before the unit 용감한 to be connected.

1. The adverb can be an adverbial modifier.
1) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verb.
(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verb, the final predicate.

for example:
그 녀 빨리 *1 달린다 *2.
[kunun bballi tallinda]
he quickly runs

explanation:
*1 The adverb 빨리 lies before the final form 달린다 of
the verb 달리다, the final predicate.

*2 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
    stem ending
달리 + 니다 (니다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
달린다 (after contracting the syllable 림 and the sound 라)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verb, the connecting predicate.

for example:
그가 안 오고 내가 온다. | He doesn't come
[kuga anogo naega onda] and I come
he not comes and I come

explanation:
*1 The adverb 안 lies before the connecting form 오고 of the verb 오다, the connecting predicate.
*2 오 + 다 [o da] come
    stem ending
오 + 고 (고 - copulative connecting ending of the verb)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verb (refer to 147), the attribute.

for example:
잘 잤는 야이 [cha: chanun ai] a good sleeping child
good sleeping child

explanation:
*1 The adverb 잘 comes before the attributive form 자는
of the verb 자다, the attribute.

*2 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep

stem ending

자 + 는[는—a-attribute ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

2) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the adjective

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and lies before the final form of the adjective, the final predicate.

for example:

이 방은 아주*1 큰니다*2 | This room is very
[pang.un aju kumnida] large.
this room very large

explanation:

*1 The adverb 아주 comes before the final form 큰니다 of the adjective 크다, the final predicate.

*2 크 + 다 [ku da] large

stem ending

큰니다(비니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

클니다(after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 니다)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the adjective, the connecting predicate.

for example:

이 방은 아주*1 크고*2 밝다 | This room is
[pang.un aju kugo pakda] very large and
this room very large and bright
bright.
explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the connecting form 크고 of the adjective 크다, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 큰 [ku da] large

stem ending

크 + 고 (copulative connecting ending of the adjective)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the adjective.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the adjective (refer to 149), the attribute.

for example:

아주 크 [aju kun pang] very large room

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the attributive form 큰 of the adjective 크다, the attribute.

*₂ 큰 [ku da] large

stem ending

크 + 큰 ( 큰 - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)]

큰 (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 큰)

3) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.
numeral, the final predicate.

for example:

별 씨 가을 이다.  
[polsso kaurida]  
already autumn is

It is already autumn.

explanation:

*1 The adverb 별씨 lies before the final form 가을이다 of
the verbal form of the noun 가을, the final predicate.

*2 가을 + 이다 (가울 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low
declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate
expressed by the connecting form of the verbal
form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes
before the connecting form of the verbal form of the
noun, pronoun or numeral, the connecting predicate.

for example:

별씨 가을 이 지만
[polsso kaurijiman]  
already autumn is but
날씨는 따뜻하다.
[nalssinun ddaddutada]  
the weather warm

It is already autumn,
but the weather is warm.

explanation:

*1 The adverb 별씨 lies before the connecting form 가울
이지만 of the verbal form of the noun 가을, the con-
necting predicate.

*2 가을 + 이 + 지만 (가울 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 지만 - ad-
versative connecting ending of the verbal form)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute ex-
pressed by the attributive form of the verbal form
of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral (refer to 154), the attribute.

for example:
별써*₁  대 학 생 인 *₂
[polsso taehaksaeng.in
already student being
김 동 무
kimdongmu]
Kim comrade

Comrade Kim who is already a student

explanation:
*₁ The adverb 별써 comes before the attributive form 대학생인 of the verbal form of the noun 대학생, the attribute.

*₂ 대학생 + 이 + 럼 (대학생 - noun 이 - attributive ending 럼 of the verbal form in its present tense) 대학생인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 럼)

4) The adverb can be a modifier to another modifier expressed by an adverb or adverbial form.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before another adverb or adverbial form, the adverbial modifier.

for example:
좀*₁  천천히 걸어라*₂!
[chom chonchoni korora]
a little slowly walk!

Walk a little slowly!

explanation:
*₁ The adverb 좀 comes before another adverb 천천히, the adverbial modifier.

*₂ 걷다 walk
걸어라[(여라 - low imperative form of the final ending of

199
the verb) * after exchanging the sound = for the sound ≠
(refer to 196)

2. The adverb can be an attribute.

The adverb may lie before the word which it modifies.
for example:

\[\text{풍* 소리} \quad \text{bang}\]

\[\text{kung sori}\]

\[\text{bang crack}\]

* The adverb 풍 comes before the word 소리 it refers to.

3. The adverb can be a predicate.

The adverb comes at the end of the sentence.
for example:

\[\text{닭들은 까끼오*} \quad \text{Hens cry cock-}\]

\[\text{[takdurun ggoggo\text{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}] a-doodle-doo}\]

\[\text{hens cock-a-doodle-doo}\]

* The adverb 까끼오 comes at the end of the sentence.

4. The connecting adverb connects similar units.

for example:

\[\text{정치, 경제 및 문화 | policy, economy and}\]

\[\text{[chongchi kyongje mit munhwa] culture}\]

* The connecting adverb 및 connects 정체 and 문화 and comes between them.

LESSON 9

THE PRE-NOUN

143 The pre-noun is a part of speech which defines the
class or the object and is not used as a predicate,
but only as an attribute.

for example:

\[\text{определен слово | whole society}\]

\[\text{pre-noun noun}\]
모든 근로자들 [modun kullojadul] all working people

pre-noun noun

explanation:
* 근로자 + 들 (근로자 - noun 들 - plural ending)

144 The pre-nouns are divided into two kinds:

1. The pre-noun which expresses the quantity of the object

for example:
〇 매 [mae saram] each man

pre-noun noun
〇 약 [yak sambaе] about three times

pre-noun noun

2. The pre-noun which expresses a property of the object

for example:
〇 사회주의, 공산주의의 [sahoeju-ui kongsanju-uiui

socialism of communism of

새 기원

sae kiwon]

new era

explanation:
* 새 기원

pre-noun noun

〇 다만 [ddan saram] another person

pre-noun noun

145 The pre-noun has no ending and is only used as an attribute.

for example:
은 [on nara] whole country

pre-noun noun

explanation:
The pre-noun 은 comes before the noun 나라 as an attribute.

201
THE INTERJECTION

146 The interjection denotes the emotion and attitude of the speaker.

There are the following interjections:

1. Interjections which express emotions such as joy, sorrow and wonder:
   for example:
   1) joy: 만세! [manse] hurrah!
   2) sorrow: 오! [o] oh!, 아이고! [aigo] woe!
   3) wonder: 아! [a] ah!, 오! [o] oh!

2. Interjections which express the demand or will of the speaker.
   for example:
   ○ 자[cha] now
   ○ 어서[oso] please

3. Interjections which express the attitude of the person addressed.
   for example:
   ○ 응[ung] yes (to a person of the same rank or to an inferior)
   ○ 예[ye] yes (to a superior)

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERB

147 The attributive form of the verb is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verb to the stem of the verb:
1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verb

네[nun]

This ending is an attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs simultaneously with another action or at the time when the person is speaking. For example:

싸우는* 인민
[ssaunun inmin]
fighting people

explanation:

*싸우 + 다 [ssaud da] fight
stem ending

싸우 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past tense of the verb

 Ents

This attributive ending is the attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs before another action or before the time when the person is speaking.

〇 우리 나라에
[uri nara-e
our country in

세워진* 인민정권
sewojin inminjong-gwon]
established people power

the people’s power established in our country

explanation:

*세우 + 다 [seu da] establish
stem ending

세우 + 이 + 지다 (이 - connecting ending of method or means
지다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)
세우 + 지 + 다 (after contracting the
syllables 우 and 여)
세위 + 지 + 람 (씨—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)
세위진(after contracting the syllable 지 and the sound 람)

이 책은 내가
[i chaegun naega]
this book I
어제 읽은 책이다.
oje ilgun chaegida]
yesterday read book is

explanation:
* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
stem ending
읽 + 은 (씨—link-vowel 람—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)

읽 + 은 (after contracting the syllable 읽 and the sound 람)
3. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verb

여[don]n
for example:
이 책은 내가
[i chaegun naega]
this book I
어제 읽던
[oje ikdon]
yesterday having been read
책이다.
chaegida]
book is

explanation:
* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
stem ending
읽 + 던 (씨—attributive ending of the verb in its past continuous tense)

4. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verb

여[1]
for example:

어린이들을 앞날의
[orindurun amnarui
the children the future of
조국을
chogugul
the fatherland
으며고나갈*
ddomegonagal
to shoulder and go forward
우리 혁명의 믿음직한
uri hyongmyong-ui midumjikan
our revolution of reliable
후계자들이다.
hugyejadurida]
successors are

explanation:

* 며에 + 다 [ddome da] shoulder
stem ending

며에 + 고 + 나가다(고 - copulative connecting ending
나가다 - verb which is used as an auxiliary)

며에 + 고 + 나가 + 다
stem ending

며에 + 고 + 나가 + 믮(믿 -attributive ending of the verb in its
future tense)
며에고 나갈(after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound
民企)

이 책은 내가
[i chaegun naega
this book I
례일 임을* 책이다.
raeil ilgul chaegida]
tomorrow to be read book is

explanation:

* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
stem ending

읽 + 오 + 믮(오 - link-vowel

This book is the book which I shall read tomorrow.
Table of the attributive endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verb</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>는[nun]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>련[n]</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>데[n]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>림[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE

The attributive form of the adjective is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the adjective to the stem of the adjective:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the adjective 련[n]

for example:

오늘 우리 사회주의 조국은
(onul uri sahoeju-ui jogugun
 today our socialist fatherland
조선인민의 행복한
chosoniminui haengbokan
Korean people of happy

Our socialist fatherland is today the happy cradle of the Korean people.
보금자리이다.  
pogumjari-ida]  

*nest* is

**explanation:**

* 행복하 + 다 [haengboka da] happy

stem  ending

행복하 + 라 (ra—attributive ending of the adjective in its

present tense)

행복한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 라)

○ 이것은 붓은* 꽃이다.  
[igosun pulgun ggochida]  
this red flower is

**explanation:**

* 붓 + 다 [puk da] red

stem  ending

 붓 + 오 + 라 (오—link-vowel

라—attributive ending of the adjective in its

present tense)

 붓은 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 라)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the adjective

던[don]

**for example:**

어 들면* 하늘이 맑게 [odupdon hanuri malge

having been dark sky clearly

개인다.  
kaeinda]  
brightens

**explanation:**

* 어둡 + 다 [odup da] dark

stem  ending

어둡 + 던 (던—attributive ending of the adjective in its

past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the adjective
for example:

이 것은 클* 나무이다. This is a tree that will grow big.

Explanation:

* 크 + 다 [ku da] big

크 + 인(igosun kul namuida) attributive ending of the adjective in its future tense

클 (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 인)

150 Table of the attributive endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the adjective</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>음 [n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>덤 [don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음 [l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF
THE VERBAL FORM OF THE
NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

151 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form which is used as an attribute.

The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun,
pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verbal form to the noun, pronoun or numeral by means of the exchanging ending 오:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

\[\text{L}[n]\]

for example:

주 체 의 조 국 인*  
[chucheui chogugin
Juche of the fatherland being  

조 선  
choson]
Korea

Korea, the fatherland of Juche

explanation:

* 조국 + 이 + 었(조국-noun  이-exchanging ending  

\[\text{L-attributeive ending of the verbal form in its present tense}\]
조국인 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound \[L\])

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

\[\text{던}[don]\]

for example:

지난 년에 조선인민군  
[chinannare chosoninmingun
the past in Korean People’s Army

군인 이던*  
guninidon
soldier having been  

Kim 동 무  
kimdongmu]
Kim comrade

Comrade Kim who was a soldier of the Korean People’s Army

explanation:
*조선인민군 군인 + 이 + 던 (조선인민군 군인-noun 이-exchanging ending 던-attributive ending of the verbal form in its past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 루[1]

for example:

나라의 주인공들일* 
[naraui chuin-gongduril] the country of heroes to be

새 세대
sae sedae] new generation

explanation:

*주인공 + 들 + 이 + 루 (주인공-noun 들-plural ending 이-exchanging ending 루-attributive ending of the verbal form in its future tense)

주인공들일 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 루)

152 Table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>루[n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>던[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>루[1]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE FORM OF THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

153 This form is a form which is used as an adverbial modifier.

This is formed by attaching one of the following endings of the adverbial modifier to the stem of the verb or adjective:

게[ge], 도록[dorok]

These endings of the adverbial modifier express the manner or circumstance in which some action or situation occurs.

for example:

○ 아름답게 *1 피는*2 [arumdapge pinun]
beautifully blooming

목 랜 꽃
mangranggot
magnolia blossom

explanation:

*1 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending

아름답 + 게(게-ending of the adverbial modifier of the
verb or adjective)

*2 피 + 는 [pi da] bloom
stem ending

피 + 는(는-attributive ending of the verb in its present
tense)

○ 밥이 깊도록* [pami kipdorok]
till late at night

night deep till
2. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

These endings are used to express comparison in actions or situations.

for example:

그가, 말하듯이*  
[kuga malhadusi] 
he says as he says

3. The ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

근수록[lsurok]

This ending expresses intensification in comparison.

for example:

붉을 수록* 아름다운  
[pulgulsurok arumdaun] 
red the more beautiful 
조선의 진달래  
chosonui chindallae] 
Korean azalea

The redder, the more beautiful is Korean azalea.
Boeolssoruk (after contracting the syllable お and the sound 근)

154 Table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 게 [ge], 도록 [dorok]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 둘 [dut], 둘이 [dusi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 근수록 [ınısorok]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

155 The attributive form of the verb comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>싸우는* 인민 [ssaunun inmin]</th>
<th>fighting people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fighting people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* 싸우 + 다 [ssaud da] fight
stem ending

싸우는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)
The attributive form 싸우는 of the verb 싸우다 lies before the word 인민 it refers to.

156 The attributive form of the adjective comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>붉은* 꽃 [pulgun ggot]</th>
<th>red flower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

213
The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the word it refers to.

**Explanation:**

* 발명가인*  
[rodongja palmyong:gain worker inventor being]

Kim Dongmu  
Kim comrade

The attributive form 발명가인 of the verbal form of the noun 발명가 lies before the word 김동무 it refers to.

**Explanation:**

* 아름답게*  
[arumdapge pinun chindallae] beautifully blooming

beautifully blooming azalea

The form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective comes before the word it modifies.
verb or adjective

The form of the adverbial modifier 애름답게 of the adjective 애름답다 lies before the word 꾸는 it refers to.

159 The pre-noun comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

- 새* 집
  [sae chip]
  new house

explanation:
* The pre-noun 새 comes before the word 집 it refers to.

- 단* 두
  [tan dul]
  only two

explanation:
* The pre-noun 단 comes before the word 두 it refers to.

160 The interjection depends on no word and mostly comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

오* 평양!
[o pyongyang
oh Pyongyang!

평양은
pyongyang-un
Pyongyang

나의 심장.
naui simjang]
my heart

explanation:
* The interjection 오 comes at the beginning of the sentence.
LESSON 10

THE TENSES

161 The tenses in Korean are expressed by the tense ending.

162 The tenses expressed by the tense endings are called the absolute tenses.

The absolute tenses are the present, past and future.

1. The present
The present expresses an action or situation which occurs at the time when the person is speaking.
The present is expressed by the zero tense ending, namely without any tense ending.

for example:

철 차 는 달린다*。
[ryolchanun tallinda]
the train runs

explanation:

* 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
stem ending
달리 + 같다 (ﷲ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
달린다 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound 같다)

There is no tense ending in the final form 달린다 of the verb 달리다.

2. The past
The past expresses an action or situation which occurred before the time when the person is speaking.
The past is expressed by the ending of the past tense 았 [at]/ 옛 [ot]/ 었 [yot].

았 [at] is attached to the stem of a word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the
vowel ㅏ[ya], ㅗ[yo], ㅜ[ui] or ㅓ[o] in its last syllable.

 werkot is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the
vowel ㅏ[o], ㅗ[yo], ㅜ[u], ㅓ[u] or ㅓ[i] in its last syllable.

 werkot is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word ends in
the vowel ㅏ[a], ㅗ[e], ㅜ[oe], ㅜ[wi], ㅓ[ui]
or the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

 werkot and werkot come before the ending of the
word which is to express the past.

for example:
두 우격대원이
[tu yugyokdaewoni]
two partisans

농막집의 찾아맞다*1
nongmakjibul chajawata
the peasant’s cottage visited

Two partisans visited the peasant’s cottage.

explanation:

*1 찾아오 + 다 [chajao da] visit

stem ending

although the plural ending 들 is not attached to 우격대원,
the meaning of the plural of 우격대원 is expressed by
the numeral 두 which lies before 우격대원.

3. The future expresses the action or situation which will
occur after the person speaks.

The future is expressed by the ending of the future
tense werk.


is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the future.

for example:

우리는 레일 영국으로
We shall leave for England tomorrow.

metangetsumida
leave shall

explanation:

* metan + 다 [ddona da] start
stem ending
metan + 겪습니다 (جاج - ending of the future tense
most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The ending of the future tense 겪 is attached to the
stem metan of the verb metan.

163 The tenses are also expressed by attributive endings.

These tenses are called the relative tenses.

for example:

그는 열린 문을
he the opened door

[heun yollin munul
datada]

shut

explanation:

* 열리 + 다 [yolli da] be opened
stem ending
열리 + 린 [compact ending of the voice (refer to 176) a
attributive ending of the verb in its past tense]
열린 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound 린)

* 닫 + 다 [tat da] shut
stem ending

218
단+았+다 (것-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The attributive ending 란 of the verb is the past.
And this is anterior to the past 달았다.

○ 그는 캐달에 수행할 계획을 세웠다.*1

he next month in

suhaenghal

to be carried out

gyehoegul seowot-da]

plan worked out

He worked out the plan which will be carried out next month.

explanation:

*1 수행하다 + 다 [suhaengha da] carry out
stem ending
수행하 + 란 (것-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense)
수행할 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 란)

*2 세우 + 다 [seu da] work out
stem ending
세우 + 였 + 다 (것-ending of the past tense)
세웠다 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 였)
The attributive ending 란 of the verb is the future.
And this future is the future in the past 세웠다.

164 We can exactly express complicated relations of time by using tense endings.

1. In order to express the fact that one thing happened in the past and earlier than another thing, the combined form of two endings which express the past is used. Such a combination is made from among the past endings 았[at], 였[ot] and 였[yot].

for example:
어 집 주인은
this house of the owner

그 유격대원들과
those partisans with

전에 만났었으므로 *
before had met as

반갑게 맞이했다.
gladly received

As the house owner
had met those partisans
before, he received them
gladly.

2. 갑[at], 엿[ot] and 엏[yot] are linked with 이[1] or 겨[get]
to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

He may have arrived
at Pyongyang.

example:

거[at] 만나 + 니[na]
[manna da] meet

stem ending

만나+었 + 였 + 음 + 민로 (없-ending of the past tense
없-ending of the past tense 음-link-vowel 민로-connecting ending of cause)

만났으므로 (after contracting the syllables 나 and 았)

* 2 반갑 + 니[pangap da] glad

stem ending

반갑 + 계 (계-ending of the adverbial modifier of the
verb or adjective)

맞이하 + 니[majiha da] receive

stem ending

맞이하 + 였 + 니 (없-ending of the past tense 니-low
declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

맞이혔다 (after contracting the syllables 하 and 었)

도착하였겠다 *

tochakayotget da

may have arrived
explanation:

* 도착하 + 다  [tochaka da] arrive
stem    ending
도착하 + 였 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense
---ending of the future tense 날-low declarative form
of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the ending of the
future tense 다 are linked to express the surmise of a fact
in the past.

△ 그는 평양에
[kunun pyongyang-e
he  Pyongyang to
dochakayossugosida]
may have arrived

He may have arrived
at Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 도착하 + 였 + 은 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense
---link-vowel 은-attributive ending of the verb in
its future tense)
도착하였을 (after contracting the syllable 은 and the
sound 다)
도착하였을 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것-incomplete noun 이-ex-
changing ending 날-low declarative form of the final
ending of the verbal form)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the attributive ending
of the verb in its future tense 다 are linked to express
the surmise of a fact in the past.

165 The tenses can also be expressed by other methods.

1. The past can also be expressed by the connecting end-
ing which begins with 다[do].

221
for example:

그는 열심히 공부하다니*  
[kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni]  
he diligently studied as

성공하였다.  
song.gong.hayotda]  
succeeded

As he had studied diligently, he succeeded.

explanation:

* 공부하다 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
   stem ending
공부하다+더니 (더니-connecting ending of cause)

2. The future can also be expressed by attaching 뒷값[lgot] to the stem of the word concerned.

for example:

그는 래일 올것이다*  
[kunun raeil olgosida]  
he tomorrow come will

explanation:

오 + 다 [o da] come
   stem ending
오+/bit+것+이+다 (bit-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 것-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
   뒷것이다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound bit)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name of the tense</th>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zero ending</td>
<td>المر [at],</td>
<td>المر [ot],</td>
<td>المر [get]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>المر [yot]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

222
Respect is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the doer.

Respect is expressed by the ending of respect 시[si]. The ending of respect 시[si] is attached to the predicative word.

for example:

선생님이 가십니다*.
[sonsaengnimi kasimnida]
the teacher goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 시 + 비니다 (시-ending of respect 비니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 비)

선생님 is the owner of the action.
The speaker expresses respect to 선생님 by the ending of respect 시.

courtesy is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the person addressed.

courtesy is expressed in three forms, namely, the most deferential, middle and low forms.

for example:

○ 아버지가 가십니다*.
[abojiga kasimnida]
the father goes
explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 바니다 (시-ending of respect 바니다-most declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 바)
When a speaker speaks to a superior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the most declarative form of the final ending of the verb 바니다.

○ 아버지가 가시오*. | The father goes.
[abojiga kasiyo]
the father goes

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 오 (시-ending of respect 오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
When a speaker speaks to a person at the same rank, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

○ 아버지가 가신다*. | The father goes.
[abojiga kasinda]
the father goes

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 니다 (시-ending of respect 니다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 니다)
When a speaker speaks to an inferior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 니다.
There are two cases in (the relation between) respect and courtesy.

In the first case the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

In the second case the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1. When the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

For example:

아버지 * the father
[abojinun onje]

가실니까 *?  
[kasinnigga]

평양에  
[pyongyang-e]

가실니까 *?  
[kasinnigga]

When do you, father, go to Pyongyang?

Explanation:

가 + 다  [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 시 + 비니까 (시-ending of respect 비니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

가실니까 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 비)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by the ending of respect 시.

The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed, who is 아버지, by the most deferential interrogative form 비니까 of the final ending of the verb.

In Korean we do not use the personal pronoun such as you when we speak to a respected person. Instead, we use the denomination of his position in the family or society, such as father, mother and Mr.

2. When the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1) The speaker expresses respect for the doer of an action, etc.:
for example:

아버지가 평양에 가신다*.
[abojiga pyongyang-e kasinda]
the father Pyongyang to goes

The father goes to Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
   stem ending
   가 + 시 + 라 (시-ending of respect 라-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
   가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 라)

The speaker speaks to an inferior. For example, a mother speaks to her child.

2) The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed:

for example:

그 여가 평양에
[ku aega pyongyang-e]
that child Pyongyang to
갑니다*.
[goes]

That child goes to Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
   stem ending
   가 + 비니다 (비니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
   감니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 비)

The speaker speaks to a superior.

For example, a son speaks to his father.

170 There are several words which have the meaning of respect. Such words should be used correctly.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>word which has the meaning of respect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다 [mokda]</td>
<td>잡수시다[chapsusida]</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다 [chada]</td>
<td>주무시다[chumusida]</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다 [itda]</td>
<td>계시다[kesida]</td>
<td>there is, be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다 [malhada]</td>
<td>말씀하시다[malssumhasida]</td>
<td>say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다 [chuda]</td>
<td>드리다[turida]</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>올리다[ollida]</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

○ 아버지가 주무신다*.[abojiga chumusinda] | The father sleeps.
the father sleeps

explanation:

* 주무시 + 다 [jumusi da] sleep
stem ending
주무신다 (after contracting the syllable [시] and the sound [ㄴ])
The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by 주무신다.

○ 아이가 잔다*.[aiga chanda] | The child sleeps.
the child sleeps

explanation:

* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending
자 + 란다 (난다- low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The doer of the action 잔다 is the child. Therefore, the speaker does not express respect for the doer of the action.

The word 잔다 which has no meaning of respect is used here.

171 Table of the ending of respect

| ending of respect | 시 [si] |

**WORD ORDER**

172 The ending of the tense comes directly before the final ending.

for example:

O 나는 조선으로 갔다*.

[nanun chosonuro kanda] | I go to Korea.

I Korea to go

*가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The zero ending of the tense lies directly before the final ending ㄴ다.

O 나는 조선으로 갔다*.

[nanun chosonuro katda] I went to Korea.

I Korea to went

*가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending
가 + 다 ( الماضي - ending of the past tense
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 가 comes directly before the final ending 다.

I will go to Korea.

○ 나는 조선으로 가겠다.

[nanun chosonuro kageta]

I Korea to go will

explanation:

* 가 + 다 (가 - ending of the future tense
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 가 comes directly before the final ending 다.

The ending of respect comes before the final ending.

for example:

○ 아버지는 공장으로 가신다.

[abojinun konjang-u]  the father the factory to

가신다.*

kasinda]

go

The father goes to the factory.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 (가 - ending of the respect
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)
The ending of respect 가 comes before the final ending 다.

229
The father went to the factory.

* 가 + 다 [ka da]

가 + 시 + 었다 (시-ending of respect 었다-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of respect 니 comes before the ending of the tense 었다.

**LESSON 11**

**THE VOICE**

174 The voice is the form of the verb which shows the relation between the action and its agent—the doer, indicating whether the subject of the sentence is the agent or the object of the action expressed by the predicate verb.

There are three voices in Korean—active, passive and causative.

175 1. active voice

The active voice shows that the action is performed by its subject, that the subject is the doer of the action. The active form is expressed by the zero ending.

for example:
That man writes
the letter well.

explanation:

* 쓰 다 [ssu da] write
stem ending

쓰 다 (나 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

(after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound 나)

176 2. The passive voice

The passive voice shows that the subject is the recipient—the object of this action.

The passive voice is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[이], 엠[이], 기[기] or 리[리].

for example:

그 총이에에는 강사가
[ku chong ienun kulssiga on that paper the letter
잘 쓰이다.*
chal ssuinda] well is written

explanation:

* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write
stem ending

쓰 + 이 다 (이 - ending of the voice of the passive
form 나 - low declarative form of the final ending of
the verb)

(after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound 나)

The action in which the letter is written is expressed by
the passive form 쓰이다 which has the ending of the
231
passive voice 이
* 종이 + 에 +는 (종이 - noun    에 - dative ending)
              는 - auxiliary ending  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice of the passive form</th>
<th>end sound of the stem of the word</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이[ì]</td>
<td>vowel, ㄱ[r], ㄱ[gg], ㅋ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅎ[h]</td>
<td>보이다[poida] be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(보다[poda] see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하[hi]</td>
<td>ㅂ[p], ㄷ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[k]</td>
<td>박히다[pakida] be struck in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(박다[pakda] strike in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기[gi]</td>
<td>ㅁ[m], ㄴ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[ch], ㅅ[t]</td>
<td>셋기다[ssitgida] be washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(셋다[ssitda] wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>리[ri]</td>
<td>ㄹ[l], ㄹ[ru]</td>
<td>날리다[nallda] be flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(날다[nalda] fly)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
The have indicated here only such endings of the voice of
the passive form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the passive form, please refer to the appendix.

177 3. The causative form

The causative form is expressed by the ending of the voice 0[i], ᄀ[hi], 갸[gi] or ᄆ[ri].

for example:

그는 사람들을 잘
[kunun saramdurul chal]
he the people well

웃긴다*.
[utginda]
makes laugh

He's good at making the people laugh.

explanation:

* 웃 + 다 [ut da] laugh

stem ending

웃 + 기 + 란다 (기-ending of the voice of the causative form, 란다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

웃긴다 (after contracting the syllable 기 and the sound 란)

The action in which he makes the people laugh is expressed by the causative form 웃긴다 which has the ending of the voice 기.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice of the causative form</th>
<th>end sound of the stem of the word</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0[i]</td>
<td>vowel, ᄆ[r]</td>
<td>먹이다 [mogida] let eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ[g], ㄲ[gg], ㅋ[k]</td>
<td>몇다[mokda] eat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ[p], ㄸ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅋ[k]</td>
<td>앉히다[anchida] let sit, set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(앉다[anda] sit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ[m], ㄴ[n], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[ch], ㅅ[s]</td>
<td>웃기다[utgida] make laugh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(웃다[utda] laugh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ[l], _rp</td>
<td>울리다[ullida] make weep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(울다[ulda] weep)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of the causative form which are frequently used. For the other endings of the voice of the causative form, please refer to the appendix.

**178 The voice may also be expressed as follows:**

for example:

○ 발전되다  
[paljondoeda]  |  be developed

explanation:
발전  +  다  [paljonha da] develop
stem  ending:
발전  +  하  +  다
root  suffix  ending
발전  +  되다
verb

○ 파괴당하다
[pagoedanghada]  |  be destroyed

explanation:
파괴  +  다  [pagoeha da] destroy
stem  ending:
파괴  +  하  +  다
root  suffix  ending
파괴  +  당하다
verb

○ 착취받다
[chakchwhbatda]  |  be exploited

explanation:
착취  +  다  [chakchwiha da] exploit
stem  ending:
착취  +  하  +  다
root  suffix  ending
착취  +  받다
verb

○ 다탕아지다
[taggajida]  |  be polished

explanation:
닭  +  다  [tak da] polish
stem  ending:
닭  +  아  +  지다  (아-connecting ending of method
or means 지다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)
2. In order to express the causative 시키다 [sikida] “let”, make study
    -계 하다 [ge hada] “let” or -도록 하다 [dorok hada] “let”, etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

    For example:
    ○ 공부시키다
      [kongbusikida] make study
      explanation:
      공부 + 하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
      root suffix ending
      공부 + 시키다 make study
      verb

    ○ 맥게 하다
      [mokge hada] let eat
      explanation:
      맥 + 하 [mok da] eat
      stem ending
      맥 + 계 하다 (계-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb 하다-verb)

    ○ 맥도록 하다
      [mokdorok hada] let eat
      explanation:
      맥 + 도록 하다 (도록-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb 하다-verb)

179 Table of endings of the voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice</th>
<th>passive form</th>
<th>causative form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이[i],</td>
<td>이[i],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>히[hi],</td>
<td>히[hi],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가[gi],</td>
<td>가[gi],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>리[ri]</td>
<td>리[ri]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We have indicated here only such endings of the voice which are frequently used.
For the other endings of the voice, please refer to the appendix.

THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

180 The exchanging endings are the endings which make the noun, pronoun or numeral into the verbal form or in the reverse the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into the noun.

181 When the noun, pronoun or numeral is made into the verbal form, the exchanging ending 오 [i] is attached to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

For example:

○ 평양은
  [pyongyang-un
  Pyongyang
조선민주주의
chosonminju-ui
the Democratic People's
인민공화국의
inmin-gonghwagui
Republic of Korea of
수도이다*.
sudoida]
the capital is

Pyongyang is the capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

explanation:

* 수도 + 이 + 다 (수도-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
The exchanging ending 오 is attached to the noun 수도.
○ 다음 차례는 너이다.*

[taum charyenun noida]

next turn you is

Next, it is your turn.

* 너 + 이 + 다 (너-pon 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the pronoun 너.

○ 조선은 하나이다.*

[chosonun hanaida]

Korea is one.

* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나-numeral 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the numeral 하나.

182 When the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is turned into the noun, the exchanging ending □[m] or 가[gi] is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the stem of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 아침에 일찍

[achime iljik] the morning in early

일어남은* 진강에 좋다.

[ironamun kon-gang-e chota] getting up health to good

Getting up early in the morning is good for the health.

* 일어나 + 다 [irona da] get up

stem ending

일어나 + 가 (가-exchanging ending)

일어남 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound 가)

238
The exchanging ending 口 is attached to the stem 일어요다.

○ 그는 일하기를 좋어요다**2.  He likes working.
[kunun ilhagirul choahanda] working likes

explanation:
*1 일하 + 다 [ilha da] work
stem ending
일하 + 기 + 르(기-exchanging ending 르-accusative ending)
The exchanging ending 기 is attached to the stem 일하 of the verb 일하다.
*2 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good
stem ending
 좋+아+하다 (아-connection ending of method or means
하다-verb which is used as an auxiliary do)
 좋 + 아 + 하 + 다

좋아하다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound 라)

○ 나는 아침에 일찍 일어남이 건강에
I know that getting
[nanun achime iljjik]
the morning in early

ironami kon·gang·e
getting up health to

좋음 응*1 응*2.  I know that getting
[choumul anda]
good being know

explanation:
*1 좋 + 달 [cho ta] good
stem ending
 좋+으+口+을 (口-link-vowel 口-exchanging ending

239
울 - accusative ending

The exchanging ending ᴼ is attached to the stem 모 of the adjective 모다 by the link-vowel 오.

* 알 + 다 [al da] know
stem ending
알 + 라다 (라다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
아다 [after dropping the sound 이 (refer 196) and contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 라]

〇 나는 주체조선의
[nanun chuchejo sonui I Juche Korea of
公民主의 * 자랑한다, kongminmul charanghandan] citizen being proud
公민임을

I am proud that I am a citizen of Korea of Juche.

explanation:

* 공민 + 이 + 다 [kongmini da] citizen be
(공민 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
공민 + 이 + ᴼ + 을 (을 - exchanging ending 을 - accusative ending)
공민임을 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ᴼ)
The exchanging ending ᴼ is attached to the exchanging ending 오, and the exchanging ending 오 is attached to the noun 공민.

183 The exchanging ending should be used correctly.

1. The exchanging ending 오 can be omitted after noun, pronoun or numeral which ends in a vowel.

for example:

그는 의사다*. [kunun uisada] he doctor is

He is a doctor.
The exchanging ending 〜 is not omitted in the attributive form.

for example:

의사인* 김동무
[uisain kimdongmu] Comrade Kim, a doctor
doctor being Kim comrade

The exchanging ending 〜 makes the verb, adjective
and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral
into a noun.

2. The exchanging ending □[m] makes the verb, adjective
and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun and also expresses the process of the action.

for example:

의사가 되기 전에* 먼저
[uisaga toegijone monjo] a doctor becoming before first
혁명가가 되어야 한다.
hyongmyong.gaga toeyoya handa a revolutionary become must

Man must become a revolutionary before becoming a doctor.

The exchanging ending 되다 [toe da] become

stem ending

되+기+전+에 (기-exchanging ending 전-noun)
The exchanging ending ㄱ makes the verb 되다 into the noun and also expresses the process of becoming a doctor.

3. The substantivized form by the exchanging ending [m] can also be used as a predicate.

For example:

오늘은 날씨가 맑음
[onurun nalssiga] today the weather

The weather is clear today.

For example:

* 맑음 [mak da] clear
stem ending

 앞 + 오 + 음 [link-vowel - exchanging ending]

관음 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 음)

Explanation:

**Table of the exchanging endings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending</th>
<th>verbal form</th>
<th>substantive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exchanging</td>
<td>올[i]</td>
<td>ㄱ [m],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>까[gi]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson 12**

**The Auxiliary Endings**

The auxiliary endings are attached to various kinds of words. These endings are used to express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.
There are the following auxiliary endings:

- 는 [noun] (으) [n] / 은 [un]
- 야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]
- 나 [na] / 이나 [ina]
- 커녕 [konyong]
- 마다 [man]
- 부러 [buto]
- 까지 [ggaji]
- 도 [do]

There is a difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings.
As mentioned the auxiliary endings express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.
But the case endings express the connective relations between words.

For example:

울해에는 과일도* 잘
[olhaenun kwaildo chal
toeyotda]
this year in the fruit also well

 Became

explanation:

* 과일 + 도

noun auxiliary ending

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the relation between the fruit and other agricultural products such as grain, vegetables and so on.

For example:

울해에는 과일이* 잘 되었다. [olhaenun kwairi chal toeyotda]
this year in the fruit good became

explanation:

* 과일 + 이

noun nominative ending

The nominative ending 이 expresses the relation between
the word 파일 and the word combination 잘 되었다.

187 The auxiliary endings are divided as follows according to the content of the relations which the auxiliary endings express:

1. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of inclusion 도 [do] also

for example:

울해에는 낳새도* [olhaeun namsaedo] this year the vegetable also 잘 되었다. [toeyotda] well became

The vegetable also grew well this year.

explanation:

* 남새 + 도 noun auxiliary ending of inclusion
The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the idea that agricultural products including the vegetables have grown well.

2. The auxiliary ending which expresses restriction 만 [man] alone

for example:

나만* 간다. [naman kanda] I go alone.

I only go

explanation:

* 나 + 만 pronoun auxiliary ending of restriction
The auxiliary ending 만 expresses that I and no one else go alone.

3. The auxiliary endings which express the relation of
limitation: 부터 [buto] from 까지 [ggaji] till

for example:
1926년 부터*¹ [chon·gubaek·isimryungnyon·buto] from 1926 to 1989
1926 year from
1989년 까지*² [chon·gubaek·palsip·gunyon·ggaji]
1989 year till

explanation:
*¹ 1926년 + 부터 noun auxiliary ending of limitation
*² 1989년 + 까지 noun auxiliary ending of limitation

4. The auxiliary ending which express the relation of indication 는 [nun] (ㄴ [n])/ 은 [un]
for example:
○ 나는* 간다. [nanun kanda] I go.

explanation:
* 나 + 는 pronoun auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 는 expresses that no one other than I go.
The auxiliary ending 는 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 는 is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 난* 간다. [nan kanda] I go.

explanation:
* 난 + 는 pronoun auxiliary ending of indication

245
The auxiliary ending 语气 expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending 语气 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 副 is attached ends in a vowel.

The sky is blue.

Explanation:

* 하늘은 语气 noun auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 音 expresses that nothing other than the sky is blue.

The auxiliary ending 语气 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 语气 is attached ends in a consonant.

5. The auxiliary endings which express the emphasis

아역 / 이역[niya]

You must go whether others go or not.

for example:

남의역 가든지 말든지 [namiya kadunji maldunji just others go or not

너는 가야 한다. [nonun kaya handa] you go must

Explanation:

* 남역 + 이역 noun auxiliary ending of emphasis

The auxiliary ending 이역 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 语气 is attached ends in a consonant.

The auxiliary ending 语气 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 语气 is attached ends in a vowel.

6. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of concession

나역 / 이나역[ina]
for example:

그 한테 나* 가자!  
[ku hantena kaja]

him to let us go!

(나—even if he is not the very man we want)

explanation:

* 그 + 한테 + 나 [그—pronoun 한테—ending which is used as the case ending (refer to 189) 나—auxiliary ending of concession]

The auxiliary ending 나 expresses that he is not the very man we want.

The auxiliary ending 나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 나 is attached ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 이나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이나 is attached ends in a consonant.

7. The auxiliary ending which expresses negation

커녕 [konyong]

for example:

비는 커녕* 구름 한점  
[pinunkonyong kurum hanjom rain far from cloud a piece
없는 nalssiyotda]
not there being weather was

Far from raining, it was a cloudless day.

explanation:

* 비 + 는 + 커녕 (비—noun 는—auxiliary ending of indication 커녕—auxiliary ending of negation)

The auxiliary ending 커녕 is usually used together with the auxiliary ending 는 or 은.

The auxiliary ending 은 is attached to a syllable which ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 은 is attached to a syllable which ends in a consonant.
Table of auxiliary endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>auxiliary ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relation of inclusion</td>
<td>도 [do] also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of restriction</td>
<td>만 [man] only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of limitation</td>
<td>부터 [buto] from,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>까지 [ggaji] till</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of indication</td>
<td>는 [nun] / 은 [un]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of emphasis</td>
<td>야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of concession</td>
<td>나 [na] / 이나 [ina]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of negation</td>
<td>커녕 [konyong]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks:
We have indicated here only such auxiliary endings which are frequently used.
For the other auxiliary endings, please refer to the appendix.

ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

There are the following endings which are used as case endings:

1. 란 [ran] / 이란 [iran]
   These endings perform the function of nominative endings and are used to give a definition to the word acting as the subject.
In a nutshell, the idea of Juche means that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction.

For example:
주체사상이란* 한마디로 Juche Idea in a nutshell
malhayo hyongmyong-gwa saying revolution and
건설의 주인은 konsorul construction of the master
인민대중이며 inmindaejung-imyo people masses is and
혁명과 건설을 hyongmyong-gwa konsorul revolution and construction
추동하는 힘도 chudonghanun himdo driving force also
인민대중에게 있다 inmindaejung-ege itdanun the people masses to there being
사상이다. sasang-ida] idea is

Explanation:
* 주체사상 + 이란 (주체사상—noun 이란—ending which is used as the case ending)
The ending 이란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 이란 is attached ends in a consonant.
The ending 란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 란 is attached ends in a vowel.

2. 한례[hante]
This ending is mostly used in spoken language and serves the function of a dative ending.
for example:
그는 나한테* 물는다. He asks me.
[kunun nahante munnunda] he me to asks

explanation:
* 나 + 한테(나—pronoun 한테—ending which is used as the case ending)

3. 하고[hago]
This ending serves the same function as that of the
ending of the coordinative case.

for example:
김동무 하고* 나 Comrade Kim and I
[kimdongmuhago na] Kim comrade and I

explanation:
* 김동무 + 하고(김동무—noun 하고—ending which is
used as the case ending)

4. 보다[boda] (more) than
처럼 [chorom] as, 마다[mada] every
The endings 보다,처럼 are used to express comparison.

for example:
○ 그는 나보다* 크다. He is bigger than I.
[kunun naboda kuda] he I than big

explanation:
* 나 + 보다(나—pronoun 보다—ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 눈처럼* 흰 white as snow
[nunchorom huin] snow as white
explanation:

* 놓 + 처럼 (noun - noun 처럼-ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 해마다
[haemada]
year every

explanation:

해 + 마다 (해 - noun 마다-ending which is used as the case ending)

190 Table of endings which are used as case endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>ending which is used as the case ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>란 [ran]/이란 [iran]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>한데 [hante]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>하고 [hago]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>보다 [boda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>처럼 [chorom]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>마다 [mada]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such endings which are frequently used.
For the other endings, please refer to the appendix.

LESSON 13

STEM AED ENDING

191 The distinction between the stem and the ending is clear in the formation of Korean words.

When a certain grammatical meaning is necessary, the
ending to express it is attached to the stem, when unnecessary, some omissions are made.

for example:

보고 + 다 [po da] see

stem ending

in order to express respect
보고 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see
(시-ending of respect)

in order to express the causative
보고 + 오 + 다 [po i da] show
(오-ending of the causative voice)

in order to express the past
보고 + 왔 + 다 [po at da] saw
(杏-ending of the past tense)

In order to express both the causative and respect, the ending of the causative voice 오[i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are attached to the stem.

보고 + 오 + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show
(오-ending of the causative voice 시-ending of respect)

In order to express both the causative and the past, the ending of the causative voice 오[i] and the ending of the past tense 왔[yot] are attached to the stem.

보고 + 오 + 왔 + 다 [po i yot da] showed
(오-ending of the causative voice 왔-ending of the past tense)

In order to express causative, respect and the past simultaneously, the ending of the causative voice 오[i]
the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 었[yot] are attached to the stem.
보 + 01 + 시 + 었 + 다[po i si yot da] showed
(」-ending of the causative voice 시- ending of respect 었- ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meaning of the causative in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” is not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] is omitted.
보 + 시 + 었 + 다[po si yot da] saw
(시- ending of respect 었- ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meaning of the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” is not necessary, the ending of the past tense 었[yot] is omitted.
보 + 이 + 시 + 다[po i si da] show
(이- ending of the causative voice 시- ending of respect)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and respect in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are omitted.

보 + 었 + 다[po at da] saw
(없- ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meanings of respect and the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 었[yot] are omitted.
보 + 01 + 다[po i da] show
(이- ending of the causative voice)
When the grammatical meanings of the causative and the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are omitted.

보 + 시 + 다[po si da] see

(시—ending of respect)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative, respect and the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i], the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are omitted.

보 + 다[po da] see

stem ending

ATTACHING OF ENDINGS

192 The endings are attached one by one.

| 공장 에서의  모임 | the meeting in the factory |
| 공장 에서의  모임 | the factory in the meeting |

explanation:

공장 + 에서 locative ending

First, the locative ending 에서 is attached to the noun 공장.

공장 + 의 genitive ending

Next, the genitive ending 의 is attached to 공장에서.

PAIRS OF ENDINGS

193 There are pairs of endings, which have the same grammatical meaning. Their usage differs according to the last sounds which the stems have.

for example:
1. 나무 가*1 높다. The tree is high.
   [namuga]  [nopa] the tree high

물 이*2 맑다. The water is clear.
   [muri]  [makda] the water clear

**explanation:**
*1 나무 noun + 가 nominative ending
*2 물 noun + 이 nominative ending

The endings 가 and 이 form a pair of nominative endings.
The nominative ending 가 is attached to a word which ends
in a vowel.
The nominative ending 이 is attached to a word which ends
in a consonant.

2. 노래 와*1 쩔 song and dance
   [noraewa]  [chum] song and
dance

춤 과*2 노래 dance and song
   [chungwa]  [norae] dance and
song

**explanation:**
*1 노래 noun + 와 ending of the coordinative case
*2 쩔 noun + 과 ending of the coordinative case

The endings 와 and 과 form a pair of endings of the coor-
dinative case.
The ending of the coordinative case 와 is attached to a
word which ends in a vowel.
The ending of the coordinative case 과 is attached to a
word which ends in a consonant.
3. 나는 가오*1.
[nanun kao]
I go
그는 갔소*2.
[kunun katso]
he went

He went.

explanation:

*1 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

*2 가 + 있 + 소 (있—ending of the past tense 소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The final endings 오 and 소 form a pair of final endings. The final ending 오 is attached to a stem which ends in a vowel.
The final ending 소 is attached to a stem which ends in a consonant.

THE LINK-VOWEL

194 When an ending which begins with a consonant is attached to a word or stem which ends in a consonant, the syllable 오 [i] or 오 [u] is inserted between them in some cases.

This syllable 오 [i] or 오 [u] is called the link-vowel.

1. syllable 오 [i]

for example
○ 책 + 오 + 나마 [chaeg i nama] though the book noun link-vowel auxiliary ending

explanation:
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the noun 책 which
ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending which
begins with a consonant.

- 그들 + 오 + 나아 [ku duri nama] though they
  pronoun link-vowel auxiliary ending
  explanation:
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the pronoun 그들
which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending 나아
which begins with a consonant.

- 들 + 오 + 나아 [turi nama] though two
  numeral link-vowel auxiliary ending
  explanation:
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the numeral 들 which
ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending 나아 which
begins with a consonant.

- 책 + 오 + 다 [chaeg i da] it's a book
  [책-noun 오-exchanging ending (link-vowel) 다-low declarative
  rative form of the final ending of the verbal form]
remarks:
The syllable 오 which is inserted between the stem and
predicative ending is the exchanging ending.

2. The syllable 오[u]
for example

- 책 + 오 + 도 [chaeg u ro] with the book
  noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 이것 + 오 + 도 [igos u ro] with this
  pronoun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 셋 + 오 + 도 [ses u ro] with three
  numeral link-vowel instrumental ending

- 읽으며 [ilgumyo] read and
  읽 + 다 [ik da] read
  stem ↓ ending
  읽 + 오 + 머 (오-link-vowel 머-copulative
  connecting ending)
THE VOCAL HARMONY

195 The vocal harmony

1. when the vowel [a], [ya] or [o] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending ｏ[α], 아라 [ara], 아도 [ado] or 엮[at] is attached to the stem.

for example:

막 + 다 [mak da] block
stem ending

막 + 아 [mag a] blocking
(아—connecting ending of method or means)

막 + 아라 [mag ara] block!
(아라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

막 + 아도 [mag ado] even if block
(아도—connecting ending of condition)

막 + 엮 + 다 [mag at da] blocked
(-webpack ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

remarks:
The verb 하다[hada] “do” is excluded here.
Although the stem 하 of the verb 하다 has the vowel [a], the ending 엮[yo], 여라[yora], 여도[yodo] or 엮[yot] is attached to the stem 하.

for example

하 + 다 [ha da] do
class ending
와 [ha yo] doing
(여 – connecting ending of method or means)
와 [ha yora] do!
(여라 – low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
와 [ha yodo] even if do
(여도 – connecting ending of condition)
와 원 + 다 [ha yot da] did
(요 – ending of the past tense 란 – low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. When the vowel [o], [yo], [u], [u] or [i] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending 어[о], 어라 [ora], 어도[odo] or 요[ot] is attached to the stem.
for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending
와 [mog o] eating
(여 – connecting ending of method or means)
와 먹 + 어라 [mog ora] eat!
(여라 – low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
와 먹 + 어도 [mog odo] even if eat
(여도 – connecting ending of condition)
와 먹 + 요 + 다 [mog ot da] ate
(요 – ending of the past tense 란 – low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. when the stem ends in the vowel [i], [ae], [e], [ei], [oi], [ui], [ui] or syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable, the ending 어 [yo], 어라 [yora], 어도 [yodo] or 요 [yot] is attached to the stem.
for example:

가지 + 다 [kaji da] have

stem ending

○ 가지 + 여 [kaji yo] having
  (여—connecting ending of method or means)

○ 가지 + 여라 [kaji yora] have!
  (여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 가지 + 여도 [kaji yodo] even if have
  (여도—connecting ending of condition)

○ 가지 + 월 + 다 [kaji yot da] had
  (월—ending of past월다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

THE EXCHANGE OF SOUNDS

196 The exchange of sounds is also made partly in Korean when some endings are attached to stems.

In such cases the changed sound also belongs to the stem.

The exchange of sounds is as follows:

1. The last syllable 르[ru] of the stem of the verb or adjective is changed to 르교[ll] before the connecting ending of method or means 여[о], before the ending of the past tense 월[ot] or before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 여라[ora].

for example:

효르 + 다 [huru da] flow

stem ending

○ 흡르 [hullo] flowing
  효르 + 르[ru] + 여 (여—connecting ending of method or means)
The last syllable  른 of the stem  흐르다 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to  른 before the connecting ending of method or means 어.

홍 + 른 + 어 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound  른)
홍려 [hullota] flowed
홍 + 른 + 었 + 다 (low ending of the past tense 른 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable  른 of the stem  흐르다 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to  른 before the ending of the past tense 었.

홍 + 른 + 었 + 다 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound  른)
홍려나 [hullora] flowed!
홍 + 른 + 어라 (여라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last consonant  들 of the stem of the verb is partly changed to  른 before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 을 [u].

2. The last consonant  들 of the stem of the verb is partly changed to  른 before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 을 [u].
for example:

ドラ [tut da] hear
stem ending

- 듣어 [tur o] hearing
  듣 + 어 (어 - connecting ending of method or means)
The last consonant 듣 of the stem 듣 of the verb 듣니
is changed to 어 before the connecting ending of method
or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

- 들으니 [turuni] as hear
  들 + 음 + 니 (음 - link-vowel 니 - connecting ending
    of cause)
The last consonant 들 of the stem 들 of the verb 들니
is changed to 음 before the connecting ending of cause
니 which requires the link-vowel 음.

3. The last consonant 니다 of the stem of the verb 오
adjective is partly changed to 오[으] 오[으] before an
ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending
which requires the link-vowel 오[으].

for example:

돕 + 다 [top da] help
stem ending

- 도와 [towa] helping
  도 + 오 + 아 (아 - connecting ending of method
    or means)
The last consonant 도 of the stem 도 of the verb 도
다 is changed to 오 before the connecting ending of
method or means 아 which begins with a vowel.

- 도와 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 아)

- 도우니 [touni] as help
  도 + 우 + 니 (니 - connecting ending of cause)
The last consonant 도 of the stem 도 of the verb 도
다 is changed to 우 before the connecting ending of
method or means 니 which begins with a vowel.
is changed to .Qt before the connecting ending of cause 내 which requires the link-vowel .Qt.


for example:
누르 + 다 [nuru da] golden

stem ending
누 + 르러 + 어 (어−connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable .Qt of the stem 누르 of the adjective 누르다 is changed to 르러 before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

누르러 (after contracting the sound .Qt and the syllable 어)

for example:
푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue

stem ending
푸 + 르러 + 었 + 다 ( consc-ending of the past tense
나−low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last syllable .Qt of the stem 푼르 of the adjective 푼르다 is changed to 르러 before the ending of the past tense 었 which begins with a vowel.

푸르렸다 (after contracting the sound .Qt and the syllable 었)

for example:
이르 + 다 [iru da] arrive
stem ending
이 + 를 + 어라 (여라—low imperative form  
of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 를 of the stem 이르다 is changed to 를 before the low imperative form  
of the final ending of the verb 어라 which begins  
with a vowel.

이르러라 (after contracting the sound 를 and  
the syllable 어)

5. The last sound 를 [l] of the stem of the verb or  
adjective disappears before an ending which begins with  
ㄴ [n] or ㅂ [p] and before the ending  시 [si] or ㅗ [o].

for example:
울 + 다 [ul da] weep

stem ending

○ 운는 [unun] weeping
운 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its  
present tense)

The last sound 를 of the stem 운다 of the verb 운다  
disappears before the attributive ending of the verb  
in its present tense 는 which begins with 를.

○ 음니다 [umnida] weep
울 + 랄니다 (랄니다—most deferential declarative form of  
the final ending of the verb)

The last sound 를 of the stem 올다 랄다 disappears before the most deferential declarative  
form of the final ending of the verb 랄icits which be-  
gins with 랄.

울니다 (after contracting the syllable 운 and the sound 띠)
우시며 [usimyo] weep and
우 + 시 + 며 (시-ending of respect
며-copulative connecting ending)
The last sound of the stem 죽 of the verb 죽다 disappears before the ending of respect 시.

우오 [uō] weep
우 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of
the final ending of the verb)
The last sound 죽 of the stem 죽 of the verb 죽다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

6. The last sound 나는 of the stem of the verb or adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link vowel 오.

for example:
나 + 다 [nat da] cure

나 + 아 + 서 (아-connecting ending of method
or means 서-emphasizing ending)
The last sound 나는 of the stem nad of the verb 낫다 disappears before the connecting ending of method or means 아서 which begins with a vowel.

나오며 [naumyo] cure and
나 + 오 + 며 (오-link-vowel 며-copulative
connecting ending)
The last sound 나는 of the stem 낫 of the verb 낫다 disappears before the copulative connecting ending

265
The last sound ʊ of the stem of an adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel. For example:

별장 + 다  [bbalga ta] red
stem       ending
별가  오  [bbalgao] red

The last sound ʊ of the stem 별장다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective 오 which begins with a vowel.

LESSON 14

THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

1. The predicate
2. The subject
3. The object
4. The quotation
5. The adverbial modifier
6. The attribute
7. The form of address
8. The parenthesis
9. The exlamatory word
10. The conjunctive
11. The appended modifier
The part of the sentence as a unit performs its own function in the sentence, but its composition differs. Accordingly the simple part of the sentence and the expanded part of the sentence are distinguished.

The simple part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which consists of an independent word or of a combination of words which is used as one word.

*1 조선은 아름다운 나라이다. (chosonun arumdaun naraida) Korea is a beautiful country.

*2 아름다 + 다 [arumdaep da] beautiful.

explanation:

*1 조선은 + 은 (noun auxiliary ending)
조선은 is the subject which consists of the noun 조선 and the auxiliary ending 은.
조선은 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

*2 아름다 + 다 (after contracting the syllable 다 and the sound 란)
아름다음 is the attribute which consists of the adjective 아름다운.
아름다운 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

나라 + 이 + 다 (어—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
 나라이다 is the predicate which consists of the noun 나라, the exchanging ending 이 and the low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 다.
The expanded part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which is formed by the syntactical combination of two or more independent words.

for example:

사람은 자연과 사회의
the man nature and society of
주인이며 세상에서
the master is and the world in
가장 귀중하고 가장
most precious and most
힘있는 존재이다.

Man is the master of nature and society and the most precious and powerful being in the world.

explanation:

*1 자연 +과 사회 +의 (자연-noun 과-ending of the coo-
dinative case 사회-noun 의-genitive ending)

자연과 사회의 is the syntactical combination of two independent words nature and society.

자연과 사회의 is the expanded part of the sentence.

*2 세상 +에서 가장 귀중하고 가장 힘 +있는
(세상-noun 에서-locative ending 가장-adverb 귀중하-stem
of the adjective 귀중하다 고-copulative connecting ending 가장-adverb 힘+noun 있-stem of the verb 있다 는-attri-
butive ending of the verb in its present tense

The above-mentioned combination of words is the syntactical combination of two or more independent words and the expanded part of the sentence.
THE PREDICATE

201 The predicate is the part of the sentence which is used to express the action, state or character of an object.

The predicate answers the question of "who is?", "what is?" "how does?" or "how is?" in the sentence.

for example:

○ (who is?)
우리는 관광객입니다.  |  We are tourists.
[urinun kwan·gwang·gaekdurimida] we

○ (what is?)
함흥은 공업도시이다.
[khamhung ·un
Hamhung kong·opdosida] an industrial city is

○ (how does?)
그는 파시즘을 반대하여 싸웠다.  |  He fought against fascism.
[kunun pasijumul
he the fascism
pandaehayo ssawotda] opposing fought

○ (how is?)
조선의 가을하늘은 끝없이 맑다.
[chosonui kaulhanurun
Korea of autumn sky
ggudopsy makda] endlessly clear

202 The predicates are classified as the final predicate
and the connecting predicate.

1. The final predicate
   The final predicate comes at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.
   The final predicate is expressed as follows:

1) The final form of a word becomes the final predicate. for example:
   저는 영국으로 돌아갑니다.*
   [chonun yongguro toragamnida]
   I go back to England to go back
   England.

   * 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back
   stem
   ending
   돌아가 + 니다 (니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
   돌아갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)
   The final form 돌아갑니다 of the verb 돌아갔다 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2) The connecting form of a word becomes the final predicate.

   for example:
   동무는 래일
   tongmunun raeil
   comrade tomorrow
   런던으로 떠나다으면서*
   londonuro ddonandamyonso
   London for leave and?

   * 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] leave
   stem
   ending
   떠나 + 니다 + 면서 (니다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 면서-copulative connect-
ing ending

[after contracting the syllable  나 and the sound ي]

The connecting form of the verb 먹나다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

3) The final predicate is also formed by attaching an exchanging ending to the stem of the word.

for example:
저녁에 모임이 있음*.
[chonoge moimi issum] | There is a meeting in the evening.
the evening in a meeting is

explanation:
* 음 + 다 [it da] be
stem ending
음 + 오 + 루 (오 - link-vowel 루 - exchanging ending)
음 음 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 루)
The substantive form 음 of the verb 음다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

4) Sometimes, a word without any ending becomes the final predicate.

for example:
우리는 영웅한
[urinun yongyonghan]
we heroic and brave
조선인민군*.
chosonmin-gun]
Korean People’s Army

explanation:
* 조선 + 인민 + 군
noun noun noun
The noun 조선인민군 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2. The connecting predicate lies before the final predicate.
The connecting predicate expresses that a sentence is not closed yet and connects two units of the sentence.

The connecting predicate is usually expressed by the connecting form.

1) The connecting form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

하늘은 파르고* 내 마음
the sky blue and my heart
 즐겁다.
merry

The sky is blue and I am merry.

explanation:

* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
  stem ending
푸르 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)
The connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 becomes the connecting predicate.

2) The final form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

날이 밝았다*, 안개가 자욱하다.
the day dawned the fog dense

The day has dawned, the fog is dense.

explanation:

* 밝 + 다 [pak da] dawn
  stem ending
밝 + 았 + 다 (앗—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The final form 밝았다 of the verb 밝다 becomes the connecting predicate.
3) In Korean there are nouns and adverbs which perform the function of connection. Some such nouns are 동시[tongsi] “same time”, 반면[panmyon] “contrary”, 한편[hanpyon] “one side”, 일방[ilbang] “one side”, 이상[isang] “over” and 한[han] “limit”, etc. And we can cite 결[kyom] “and concurrently” as an example of such adverbs.

Those words become the connecting predicate together with the attributive form of the word which lies before them.

for example:

그는 소설가인 [kunun sosolgain]
he a novelist being
동시에* 시인이다.
tongsie siinida]
the same time at a poet is

He is both a novelist and a poet.

**example:**

소설가 + 이 + 는 동시 + 에
 소설가-noun 이-exchanging ending 는-attributive
ending of the verbal form in its present tense
동시-noun 에-dative ending

소설가인 동시에 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 는)

203 Between the connecting predicate and the final predicate such a phenomenon is found as the grammatical meaning which is expressed in the final predicate has something to do with the connecting predicate. It is expressed as follows:

1. By the ending of respect

for example:
Father listened to me and said thus.

explanation:
* 들 + 다 [tuta] hear

stem ending

들 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)
The meaning of respect which must be expressed in the connecting form 들고 of the verb 들다 has been expressed by the ending of respect 시 in the final form 말씀하시였다 of the verb 말씀하다.

2. By the ending of the tense

for example:
바람은 불어도*
[parumun purodo
the wind blew although
세지 않았다.
seji anatda
strong not was

explanation:
* 불 + 다 [pul da] blow

stem ending

불 + 여도 (여도—connecting ending of condition)
The meaning of the past which must be expressed in the connecting form 불어도 of the verb 불다 has been expressed by the ending of the past tense 았 in the final form 않았다 of the adjective 았다.

3. By the final ending

for example:
춤을 추고* 노래를
[chumul chugo noraeul
the dance and the song

Let us dance and sing!
부릅니다.
purupsida] sing!

explanation:

* 추 + 다 [chu da] dance

stem ending

추 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)
The meaning of suggestion which must be expressed in
the connecting form 추고 of the verb 추다 has been ex-
pressed by the ending of the most deferential sugges-
tive form 부릅니다 in the final form 부릅니다 of the verb
부르다.

4. By the word which is used as an auxiliary
for example:

우리는 이 달의
[urinun i darui
we this month of
생산계획도
saengsan·gyehoeildo
production plan also
완수하고*1 래달의
wansuhago·raedarui
fulfil and next month of
생산계획도
saengsan·gyehoeildo
production plan also
완수하고야 말것이다*2.
wansuhagoya malgosida]
fulfill surely shall

explanation:

*1 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil

stem ending

완수하 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)
The modal meaning of conviction which must be express-
ed in the connecting form 완수하고 of the verb 완수하

We shall surely fulfil the production plan
for this month as well as next month.

275
다 has been expressed by the word 말것이다 which is used as an auxiliary.

*2 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil

stem ending

완수하 + 고 + 야 말다 [wansuha go ya malda] fulfil surely (고—copulative connecting ending 야—auxiliary ending of emphasis 말다—verb which is used as an auxiliary)

완수하 + 고 + 야 말 + 것 + 이 + 다 [것—incomplete noun 이—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

When the connecting predicate and the final predicate are related to different subjects, there is no relation in the grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate.

for example:

그는 왔으니까 저는 가겠습니까.
[kunun wassunigga chonun he came as I]

As he came, I will go.

kagetsunnida]
go will

explanation:
The person who came is he, and the person who will go is I.

Therefore, there is no relation in grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate 왔으니까 and the final predicate 가겠습니까.

THE SUBJECT

204 The subject is the doer of the action, etc. expressed by the predicate.

But the subject can be omitted in some cases.
The subject is expressed mainly by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The subject is expressed by attaching one of the following endings to the word:
   the nominative ending ケ서[ggesol], カ[ka] or オ[i]
   the ending which is used as the ending of the case 란[ran] or 이란[iran]
   the auxiliary ending 농[nun]/ー[n] or 은[un]

   for example:
   ○ 아버지 깨서* 오신다.  
     [aboji ggeso osinda]
     father comes

   explanation:
   * 아버지+ 깨서 (아버지-noun 깨서-nominative ending)
     The subject 아버지+ 깨서 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 깨서 to the noun 아버지.

   ○ 제가* 가겠습니다.  
     [chega kagetsumnida]
     I will go

   explanation:
   * 제 + 가 (제-pronoun 가-nominative ending)
     The subject 제가 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 가 to the pronoun 제.

   ○ 지구란* 태양계의
     [chiguran taeyang-gyeui
     the earth the solar system of
     han haengsong-ida]
     a planet is

   explanation:

   The earth is one of the planets of the solar system.
지구 + 란 (지구-noun 란-ending which is used as the ending of the case)

The subject 지구란 is expressed by attaching the ending 란, which is used as the ending of the case, to the noun 지구.

오늘의 날씨는 어떻게나가? What's the weather like today of the weather how is?

오늘의 날씨는 어떻게나가? [onurui nalssinun oddosumnigga]

explanation:

날씨 + 는 (날씨-noun 는- auxiliary ending)
The subject 날씨는 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 는 to the noun 날씨.

2. The locative ending 에서[eso] is also used for the subject when a collective object is expressed.

for example:
이 해에도 우리 농장에서* Our farm produced a lot of vegetables this year, too.
[i haeedo uri nongiang-eso
많은 남새를 생산했다. much vegetable produced
manun namsaerul saengsan haetda]

explanation:

* The subject 우리 농장에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 농장.

3. A word without ending becomes the subject.
Such a subject is often used in poems or scenarios.

for example:
저 노래*1 우리에게는*2 That song will give courage to us but 노래*1 우리에게는*2
[cho norae uriegenun fear to the enemy
that song us to]
The object expresses the object which makes up the action or state expressed by the predicate.

The object implies such a content as answers the following question:


for example:

○ (whom?)

나는 매일 그를 * 만난다. | I meet him
[nanun maeil kurul mannanda] | everyday.
I everyday him meet

explanation:
* The object 그를 makes up the action which is expressed
by the predicate 받난다.

○ (what?)
저는 커피를 마십니다.  
[cheonun kopirul [masimnida]  I drink a cup of  
coffee

explanation:
* The object 커피를 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 마십니다.

○ (to whom?)
그는 나에게 이 책을 주었다.  
[kunun nagegi i chegul chuotda]  He gave me  
he me to this book gave

explanation:
* The object 나에게 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 주었다.

○ (to what?)
나는 공장에 갔다.  
[nanun kongjang-e kanda]  I go to the factory

explanation:
* The object 공장에 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 갔다.

○ (by whom?)
나는 그에게서 강의를 받는다.  
[nanun kueseso kangiirul  
I him by lecture
받는다.
pannunda]

explanation:
* The object 그에게서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 받는다.

○ (in what?)
저는 런던에서 산니다.  
[cheonun londoneso samnida]  I live in London  
I London in live
explanation:
* The object 런던에서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 산다.

○ (to whom?)
우리는 가장 행복한
[urinun kajang haengbokan we the happiest.
인민으로* 되었다.
inminuro toeyotda]
people became

explanation:
* The object 인민으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 되었다.

○ (with what?)
나는 톱으로
[nanun toburo
I a saw with
나무를 베다.
namurul penda]
the wood cut

I cut the wood with a saw.

explanation:
* The object 톱으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 베다.

○ [(more)than who?]
그는 나보다* 크다.
[kunun naboda kuda]
he I than big

explanation:
* The object 나보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

○ [(more) than what?]
이 집은 저
[i chibun cho
this house that

This house is bigger than that one.
침보다* 크다.
chipboda kuda]
house than big

explanation:
* The object침보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

206 The object is usually expressed by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.
1. The object is expressed by attaching the ending of the case or the auxiliary ending to the word.

for example:
ô 저는 차를* [chonun charul
I tea
즐거 마십니다.
chulgyo masimnida]
for preference drink

explanation:
* The object 차를 is expressed by attaching the accusative ending 를 to the noun 차.
ô 저는 평양에서* [chonun pyongyang·eso
I Pyongyang from
런던 까지*2 갑니다.
london·ggaji kamnida]
London to go

explanation:
*1 The object 평양에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 평양.
*2 The object 런던까지만 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 까지 to the noun 런던.

2. The object is expressed without attaching any ending of the case to the word.
for example:
저는 사이다* 마십니다. | I drink a glass of
[chonun saida masimnida] lemonade.
I lemonade drink

explanation:
* The object 사이다 has no ending of the case.

3. The object is expressed by attaching to itself the word which is used as an auxiliary such as 위해[wihayo] “for”, 대하여[taehayo] “for”, 의해[uihayo] “through” , 관하여[kwanhayo] “about” and 말미암아[malmiama] “because of”.

for example:
조국을 위해* 쌍우자. | Let us fight for
[chogugul wihayo ssauja] the fatherland!
the fatherland for us fight!

explanation:
* The object 조국을 위해 is expressed by attaching to the word 조국을 the word 위해 which is used as an auxiliary.

THE QUOTATION

207 The quotation expresses the object or additional description which is introduced to give a concrete explanation of the predicate.

for example:
○ (who he is?)
그는 나에게 김동무가 했었다. | He said to me that
[kunun na.ege kimdongmuga malhayotda] Comrade Kim was a
he me to Kim comrade
축구선수라고* football player was said
explanation:
* The quotation 김동무가 축구선수라고 expresses that comrade Kim was a football player.

○ (what it is?)
그는 나에게 이것이 그의 [kunun na-ege igosi ku-ui] He said to me he me to that this his school.
학교라고 말하였다. [hakgyorago malhayotda] school was said

explanation:
* The quotation 이것이 그의 학교라고 expresses that this was his school.

○ (how man does?)
그는 열심히 공부하다고* [kunun yolsimi kongbuhajago he hard to study] He was determined
결심하였다. [kyolsimhayotda] to study hard.
determined

explanation:
* The quotation 열심히 공부하다고 expresses to study hard.

208 The quotation is expressed as follows:

1. The quotation is expressed by –라고[–rago] (–이라로[–irago]), –느니다고[–nunyago], –느가고[–ngago] and –다고[–dago] which are formed by attaching the connecting ending 고[go] to the final form of the word.

for example:
그들은 금강산이 [kudurun kumgangsani they Mt. Kumgang]
대자연의 taejayonui
the great nature of

They admired Mt. Kumgang very much for its supreme natural beauty.
우뜸가는
uddumganun
the best being
아름다움이라고* 못내
arumdaumirago monnae
beauty is that very
감탄하였다.
kamtanhayotda]
admired

explanation:
* The quotation 금강산이 대자연의 우뜸가는 아름다움이라고 is expressed by the connecting form -이라고.

2. The quotation is expressed by the final form of the word with such final endings as 다[da], 자[ja] and 느냐[nunya].

for example:
그 아이는 《아버지다》*
[ku ainun abojida
that child “father is”
소리쳤다.
sorichotda]
shouted

explanation:
* The quotation 《아버지다》 is expressed by the final form with the final ending 다 of the verbal form of the noun 아버지.

3. The quotation is expressed by attaching 하고[hago] to the quoted word.

The quoted word is put in quotation marks.

for example:
나는 그에게 《고맙습니다》 I said to him:
[nanun kuege komapsumnida
him to “Thank you”

“Thank you”.

285
The adverbial modifier defines the grade or form of the action or state to be expressed by the predicate or adds the modality to the aforementioned content.

for example:

그는 빨리 간다.  
[kunun bballi konnunda]  
he fast goes  
He goes fast.

The adverbial modifier is usually expressed by the adverb or by a form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective.

L. The adverbial modifier form of the verb or adjective becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는 밤이 깊도록*  
[kunun pами kipdorok]  
he the night deep till  
공부한다.  
kongbuhanda]  
studies  
He studies till late at night.

explanation:

* 깊 + 되 [kip da] deep end

2. The adverb or the noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.
1) All adverbs except the connecting adverb such as 및 [mit] “and” and 결 [kyon] “and concurrently” become the adverbial modifier.

for example:
그는 조선말을 아주* 잘한다.  
[kunun chosonmarul aju chal handa]  
he Korean very well speaks

* The adverb 아주 becomes the adverbial modifier.

2) The noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier without ending.

for example:
그는 나를 적극* 돕는다.  
[kunun narul chokguk me actively  
tomnunda]  
helps

* The noun 적극 used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

3) The noun in the form 적 [jok] with the instrumental ending 로[ro] or without ending becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:
그는 나를 적극적으로* 돕는다.  
[kunun narul chokgukjoguro me actively  
tomnunda]  
helps

* He actively helps me.
* 적극적 + 을 + 로 (으 - link-vowel 로 - instrumental ending)

3. The following become the adverbial modifier:

1) The incomplete nouns such as 채[chae] “just as it is”, 대로[taero] “as” and 죽족[chokjok] “every time” are attached to the attributive form of the word and become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

우리는 품을 산채로* 잡았다. | We captured the bear alive.
[urinun komul sanchaero chabatda]

explanation:

* 살 + 다 [sal da] live
stem ending

사 + 라 + 채 + 로 [(라 - attributive ending of the verb in its past tense 채 - incomplete noun “just as it is” 로 - instrumental ending) after disappearance of the sound 라 (refer to 196)]

산채로 (after contracting the syllable 사 and the sound 라)

2) The repeated connecting forms such as -나 -나[-na -na]
-든 -든[=dun =dun] and -거나 -거나[-gona -gona] become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

가 + 다 [ka da] go

Not depending on it, whether he goes or not, I go.

gi [kuga kadun angadun
he whether goes or not goes or
나는 간다.
nanun kanda]
I go
The attribute comes before attributed words and defines their character or denomination or expresses their belonging.

For example:

우리 청년들은
our youths
혁명하는 하
revolution making

세대이며
generation are and
투쟁하는 세대
folding generation are and
전진하는 세대다.
marching forward generation are

Explanation:

*1 혁명하 + 다 [hyongmyongha da] the revolution make

*2 투쟁하 + 다 [tujaengha da] fight
The attribute is expressed as follows:

1. The attributive form of words becomes the attribute.

   1) The attributive form of the verb or adjective becomes the attribute.

   for example:
   그 때는 따뜻한* [ku ddaenun ddaddutan that time warm 봄날이였다. pomnariyotda] a spring day was

   explanation:
   * 따뜻하 + 다 [ddadduta da] warm stem ending
   따뜻하 + 을 (을 - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)
   따뜻한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound 을)

   2) The attributive form of some verbs which are used as an auxiliary becomes the attribute.

   for example:
   그는 자기 고향에 [kunun chagi kohyang-e he own native place 대한* 이야기를 하였다. taehan iyagirul hayotda] about the story did

   explanation:
   대 + 하 [taeha da] be confronted (verb which is used as an auxiliary)
대하 + 라 (라 - attributive ending of the verb in its post tense)
대한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 라)

2. All pre-nouns become attribute.

for example:
선생은 매* 학생의
[sonsaeun mae haksaeung-ui
the teacher each pupil of
이름을 불렀다.]
irumul pullotda]
name called

explanation:
* 매 학생 + 의 (매 - pre-noun 학생 - noun 의 - genitive ending)
The pre-noun 매 is the attribute to the noun 학생.

3. The noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive becomes the attribute.

1) Without ending

for example:
저것이 우리* 집이다. [chogosi uri chibida]
that our house is

explanation:
* 우리 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - personal pronoun 집 -
noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of
the final ending of the verbal form)
The personal pronoun 우리 is the attribute to the noun 집.
The genitive ending 의 of the personal pronoun 우리, which is in the genitive, is omitted.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:
저것이 우리의 집이다. | That is our house.
[chogosi uriui chibida]
that our house is

explanation:
* 우리 + 의 집 + 이 + 다 (우리-personal pronoun 의-genitive ending 집-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
The personal pronoun in the genitive 우리의 is the attribute to the noun 집.

4. The adverb becomes the attribute.
1) Without ending

for example:
봉봉 별소리 | a bee’s buzzing sound
[pungbung polsori] buzz bee sound

explanation:
* 봉봉 별소리 (봉봉-adverb 별소리-noun)
The adverb 봉봉 is the attribute to the noun 별소리.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:
 스스로의 가책 | One’s own reproach
[susuroi kachaek]
one’s own reproach

explanation:
* 스스로 + 의 가책 ( 스스로-adverb 의-genitive ending 가책-noun)
The adverb 스스로 with the genitive Ending 의 is the attribute to the noun 가책.

THE FORM OF ADDRESS

213 The form of address is the word with which the
speaker calls the person addressed.

for example:
조국이여, 영원히 번영하라! Fatherland, prosper forever!
[chogugiyo yong-woni ponyonghara]
fatherland forever prosper!

214 The form of address is expressed as follows:

1. A word with the vocative ending becomes the form of address.

for example:
전우들 이여*, 동지들에게 Comrades-in-arms!
[chonuduriyo tongjidurege We send militant
comrades-in-arms comrades to
dtugoun chontujok insarul
warm militant greetings
보냅니다! send
ponaemnida]

explanation:
* 전우 + 들 + 이여 (전우-noun 들-plural ending
이여-vocative ending)

2. A word without ending becomes the form of address.

for example:
김동무*! 잘 가계! Comrade Kim!
[kimdongmu chal kage] Good-bye!
Kim comrade well go!

explanation:
* 김동무!
noun
The word 김동무 has no ending and becomes the form of address.

THE PARENTHESIS

215 The parenthesis is the part of sentence which is in-
asserted to express the source of the fact about which a person is talking or to give an additional explanation in the sentence.

for example:

"들건대* 김동무는 최우등생이다."
[tutgondae kimdongmunun they say Kim comrade 최우등생이다. a top student is]

They say Comrade Kim is a top student.

explanation:

* 들건대 is the parenthesis.

216 The parenthesis is expressed as follows:

1. The connecting form of the word becomes parenthesis.

for example:

"말하자면* 김동무는 최우등생이다."
[malhajamyon kimdongmunun so to speak Kim comrade 최우등생이다. a top student is]

Comrade Kim is a top student, so to speak.

explanation:

* 말 + 하 자면 (말 + 하자면 [malha da] speak connecting ending of condition) The connecting form 말하자면 of the verb 말하다 becomes the parenthesis.

2. Phrases become parenthesis.

for example:

"보는바와 같이* 우리"
[ponunbawa kachi uri as see our]

As you see, our football players won.
THE EXCLAMATORY WORD

217 The exclamatory word expresses the thought or attitude of the speaker according to his feelings.

for example:

예*, 저도 가겠습니다. [yes, I also go]

yes I also go will

* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

218 The exclamatory word is expressed as follows:

1. An interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

예*, 저도 갑니다. [yes, I go, too.

yes I also go]

* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

2. A non-interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

295
for example:

울소*, 자네가 울소.
[also chanega also] Right, you are right.
right you right

explanation:

* 울 + 다 [ol ta] right
stem ending
울 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final
ingoing of the adjective)
The final form 울소 of the adjective 울다 becomes the
exclamatory word.

THE CONJUNCTIVE

219 The conjunctive is the part of a sentence which con-
nnects two contents to each other.

The conjunctive usually lies at the beginning of the
sentence and connects the content of a sentence with
the content of another sentence in which the conjun-
tive lies.

for example:

라일은 아침 일찌기 [raeirun achim iljigi
tomorrow morning early
떠나야 하오. 그러니까* 오늘
ddonaya hao kuronigga onul
leave must therefore today
저녁에는 일찌기 자시오!
chonyogenun iljigi chasio]
evening in early sleep!

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그러니까 connects the content of a sen-
tence with that of the sentence in which the conjunctive
lies.
But in some cases the conjunctive performs the function of connecting two parts of a sentence to each other.

**for example:**

기적과 혁신은 공장에서, 
[kijokwa hyoksinnun 
miracle and innovation 
공장에서,] kongjang · eso 
the factory in 
광산에서, 
kwangsaneso 
the mine in 
농촌에서, 
nongchoneso 
and the countryside in 
그리고* 아촌에서 
kurigo ochoneso 
the fishing village in 
명이어 일어나고 있다. 
ryonio ironagoitda] 
one after another 
take place

**explanation:**
* The conjunctive 그리고 connects an object 光山에서 and another object 农村에서 to each other.

220 The conjunctive is expressed as follows:

1. The adverb becomes the conjunctive.

**for example:**

이 공장에서는 
in kongjang · esonun 
the factory in 
승용차를 생산한다. 
sungyongcharul saengsanhanda 
the passenger car produce 
또한* 버스도 생산한다. 
ddohan bbosudo saengsanhanda] 
as well the bus also produce

**explanation:**
* The conjunctive 또한, which is an adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in
which the conjunctive lies.

2. A non-adverb becomes the conjunctive.
   for example:
   처음에  박동무가
   first  Pak comrade
   연설하겠습니다.  다음으로*
   speech make will  next
   김동무가  연설하겠습니다.
   Kim comrade speech make will

   explanation:
   * The conjunctive 다음으로, which is a non-adverb, con-
     nects the content of a sentence with that of another sen-
     tence in which the conjunctive lies.

3. Phrases become the conjunctive.

   for example:
   그  녀자들  노래를
   she  noraerul
   잘 부른다.  그뿐 아니라*
   well sings  besides
   춤도  잘  춤다.
   the dance also well dances

   explanation:
   * The conjunctive 그뿐아니라 connects the content of a
     sentence with that of another sentence in which the con-
     junctive lies.

THE APPENDED MODIFIER

221 The appended modifier is the part of a sentence which
is presented for emphasis.

for example:

백두산, 그 이름은
Mt. Paekdu! The name will live forever in the hearts of all Koreans.

모든 조선사람의

simjangsoge yong·woni the heart in forever

살아있을 것이다.
saraisulgosida] live will

THE EXPANDED PART OF SENTENCE

222 The expanded part of a sentence consists of word combinations.

223 1. The expanded predicate

for example:

혁명의 revolution of

[hyongmyong-ui yoram the cradle

만경대는 경치가
Mangyongdae the scenery

매우 아름답다.*

maeu arumdapda] very beautiful

The scenery of Mangyongdae, the cradle of the revolution, is very beautiful.

explanation:

* 경치 + 가 매우 아름답다. (경치 - noun 가 - nominative ending 매우 - adverb 아름답다 - final form of adjective)

경치가 매우 아름답다 is a word combination and the
224 2. The expanded subject  
This is similar to the complex subject in English.  
for example:

조선말을 배우기가*  배우다  
[chosonmarul  paegiga  
the Korean language  to learn  
어렵지  않다.  
oryopji  anta]  
difficult  not

The Korean language is not difficult to learn.

** explanation:**  
* 조선말 + 을 배우다 [chosonmarul paeuda] the Korean language to learn  (조선말 noun 을 accusative ending  배우다 verb)  
조선말을 배우기 + 가 (가 exchanging ending 가 nominative ending)  
조선말을 배우기가 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.  
The word 배우기가, which comes at the end of the word combination 조선말을 배우기가, has the nominative ending 가.  
Therefore, the word combination 조선말을 배우기가 is the expanded subject.

225 3. The expanded object  
This is similar to complex object in English.  
for example:

나는  그가 돌아오기를*  돌아오다  
[nanun  kuga  toraogiriul  
I  he  to come back

I waited for him to come back.
기다렸다.
kidaryotda)
waited

explanation:
* 그가 돌아오다  [kuga toraoda] he+to come back (그-
pronoun 가-nominaive ending 돌아오다-verb)
그 가 돌아오 기 + 동 (기-exchanging ending 동-accusative ending)
그가 돌아오기 를 is a word combination and the expanded
part of the sentence.
The word 돌아오기를, which comes at the end of the word
combination 그가 돌아오기를, has the accusative ending 를.
Therefore, the word combination 그가 돌아오기를 is the
expanded object.

226 4. The expanded quotation:

for example:

그는 저녁식사전에
[kunun chonyoksiksajone
he supper before
집에 가야 하므로
chibe kaya hamuro
the house to had to go as
 돌아가겠다고* 나에게
toragagetdago na ege
go back would that me to

말했다.
malhaeta]
said

He said to me that he
would go back because he
had to go home before
supper.

explanation:
* 저녁식사전에 집에 가야 하므로 돌아가겠다고 is a word com-
bination and the expanded part of the sentence.
This expanded part of the sentence answers the question
“how does a person?”
Therefore, this expanded part of the sentence is the expanded quotation.

5. The expanded adverbial modifier for example:

강물이 눈이
[kangmuri nuni
the river water the eye
부시계* 변색지린다.
pusige ponjjokgorinda
dazzlingly glitters

The river glitters dazzlingly.

explanation:
* 눈 + 이 부시다 [nuni i pusida] the eye dazzling (눈 - noun 이 - nominative ending 부시다 - adjective)

눈이 부시 + 계 (계 - ending of the adverbial modifier)
눈이 부시계 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.
The word 부시계, which comes at the end of the word combination 눈이 부시계, has the ending of the adverbial modifier 계.
Therefore, the word combination 눈이 부시계 is the expanded adverbial modifier.

6. The expanded attribute for example:

나라와 인민의
[narawa inminui
the country and the people of
재산을 아끼고
chaesanul aggigo
the property sparing
사랑하는* 고상한 품성
saranghanun kosanghan pumsong
and loving noble character

The noble character of loving and setting store by the property of the country and people.
* 사랑하다  

[sarangha da] love

stem  

ending  

사랑하  +  다  (는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence. The word 사랑하는, which lies at the end of the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는, is the attributive form of the adjective 사랑하다. Therefore, the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is the expanded attribute.

LESSON 15

THE AGREEMENT OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

229  The agreement of parts of sentence means that a part of sentence agrees with another part of sentence in an expression.

for example:

○ 선생님이 오십니다.*  

[sonsaengnim]  

the teacher  

comes

The teacher is coming.

explanation:

* 오  +  다 [o da] come

stem  

ending  

오+시+ㅂ니다 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb) 오십니다(after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오십니다 because the subject 선생님 is respected.

○ 선생님이 주무신다.*  

[sonsaengnim]  

the teacher  

sleeps

The teacher sleeps.

303
explanation:
* 주무시다 [chumusi da] sleep (in the meaning of respect)
  stem ending
주무시다 냐다 ( 낙다—low declarative form of the final ending
  of the verb)
주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound
  냐)
The predicate 주무신다 has the meaning of respect of
  “sleep”.
The predicate 주무신다 which has the meaning of respect
  of “sleep” is used in order to show respect to the subject
  선생님.
There are agreement in the expressions of respect and
  courtesy as well as agreement in the expressions of the
  adverbial modifier, the question and the forms of address.

230 1. The agreement in expressions of respect and courte
  sry

1) The agreement in an expression of respect
When a respected person is the subject, the ending of
  respect 시 [si] is used in the predicate.

for example:
선생님 이 오신 다*        | The teacher is coming.
  [sonsaengnim]
  the teacher  오신다
  comes

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
  stem ending
오 + 시 + 냐다 (시—ending of respect 냐다—low declarative
  form of the final ending of the verb)
오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 냐)
The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오신다 in
  order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

2) The agreement in an expression of courtesy
The agreement in an expression of courtesy is agreement in which the final ending in the final predicate is changed corresponding to the attitude of the speaker toward the person addressed.

(1) Agreement in the most deferential form

When the speaker respects the person addressed, the most deferential form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:
교장 선생님이 오십니다*  
[kyojjangansaengnimi osimnida]  
The principal teacher comes

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+시+이니다 (시-ending of respect 이니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb) 
오십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 이)

The most deferential form of the final ending 이니다 lies in the final predicate 오십니다 in order to show respect to the person addressed.

(2) When the speaker and the person addressed are equals, the middle form of the final ending comes in the final predicate.

for example:
선생님이 오시오*.
[sonsaengnimi osio]
The teacher is coming.

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+시+오 (시-ending of respect 오-middle declarative
form of the final ending of the verb

The middle form of the final ending 오 lies in the final predicate 오시오 in order to express that the person addressed is on equal terms with the speaker.

(3) The agreement in the low form

When the person addressed is in a lower position to the speaker, the low form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:
어머니 오신다*.
[omnimni osinda]
the mother comes

The mother is coming.

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 시 + 림다 (시 - ending of respect 림 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 림)
The low form of the final ending 림다 lies in the final predicate 오신다 in order to express that the person addressed is on a lower level than the speaker.

3) The agreement in words which have the meaning of respect

Korean has words which have the meaning of respect in themselves. Therefore, one must use such words when he speaks to a superior.

for example:
이 책을 아버님에게 돌려라*!
[i chaegul abonimege ollryora]
this book the father to give!

explanation:
* 올리 + 다 [oll da] give (in the meaning of respect)
stem ending
올리+여라 (여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
올리라 (after contracting the syllables 라 and 여)
The predicate 올리라 is used here in order to show respect to “father”.

231 2. The agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of the sentence

for example:
우리는 전쟁을 바라지 않지만
[urinun chonjaeng.ul  paraji anchiman
we the war want not but
결코 전쟁을 두려워하지 않는다.*
kylko chonjaeng.ul turyyowohaji annunda]
ever the war fear not

We don’t want the war, but never fear it.

explanation:
* 두려워하다 [turyowyoh da] fear
stem ending
dueryowy+지 않다 (지—connecting ending of negation 앞다
verb which is used as an auxiliary)
dueryowy+지 않+는다 (는다—low declarative form of the
final ending of the verb)
The low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 앞다 in the final predicate 두려워하지 않는다,
which expresses negation, is in agreement with the
adverbial modifier 결코.

232 3. The agreement in interrogative words and other parts of the sentence

for example:
무슨 말을 그령게
[musun marul kuroke
which word so
What an interesting
story are you telling?
4. The agreement in the forms of address and other parts of the sentence

This is the agreement in which the final predicate in the low form of courtesy follows after the forms of address with the vocative ending 아[bu] 아[ya].

For example:

아 빱 두 아*b!
[no paekduya
you Paek du!
조선의 산 아*b!
chosonui sana
Korea of the mountain!
말 하 라*b!
malhara
say!
어 뭘 게 멸 어 졌 던
oddoke ddorojyotdon
how fallen
태 양 이 이 나 라 여
taeyang:i i narae
sun this country in
다 시 쫓 았 다 나!
tasi sosatdonya
again went up!

You Paekdu!
The mountain of Korea!
Speak out!
How has the sun, which had sunk, risen again in this country?
THE ORDER OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

1. The position of the predicate
   The predicate usually comes at the end of the sentence.

   for example:
   기차 가 온다
   The train comes.

   explanation:
   오 + 다 [o da] come
   오 + 냢다 (3rd person - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
   온다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 냢)
   The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The position of the subject
   The subject usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.
So long as the speaker doesn’t emphasize a certain part of the sentence, the subject always comes first.

for example:

nbsp 가* 저기예 온다. A bus comes there.

[bbosuga chogie onda]
a bus that place to comes

explanation:

* nbsp 가
noun nominative ending
The subject nbsp 가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

236 3. The position of the object
The object often lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

nbsp 는 새로운 기계를* He made a new machine.

[kunun saeroun kigyerul he new machine

만들었다. made

mandurotda]

explanation:

* 기계 + 를
noun accusative ending
The object 기계를 comes between the subject nbsp 는 and the predicate 만들었다.

nbsp 우리 는 평화 를* 원한다. We want peace!

[urinun pyonghwaru wonhanda] we the peace want

explanation:

* 평화 + 를
noun accusative ending
The object 평화를 comes between the subject 우리 는 and the predicate 원한다.
When a sentence has many objects, the object to which the
action of the predicate of the transitive verb directly goes
over always lies nearer to the predicate than other objects.

for example:
나는 그에게
[nanun kuge]
I him
그 책을 주었다.
[ku chaegul chuotda] that book gave

I gave him the book.

explanation:
* 그 책 + 을
pronoun noun accusative ending
The object 그 책을 which the action of the predicate 주
있다 directly influences comes nearer to the predicate
주었다 than the object 그에게.
The expanded object comes before other objects.

for example:
나는 일을
[nanun irul]
I the work
끝냈다 것을 *
[ggunnadanungosul] finished that
그에게 보고하였다.
[kuege pogohayotda] him reported

I reported to him that
I had finished the
work.

explanation:
* 끝내 + 다 [ggunnae da]finish
stem ending
끝내+였+다+는+것+을 (였-ending of the past tense
다-low declarative form of the final ending of the
verb 는-auxiliary ending 것-incomplete noun 을
-acusative ending)
The expanded object 일을 끝냈다는 것을 comes before another object 그에게.

The objects expressing time and place usually come at the beginning of the sentence.
When there are objects expressing time and place, the time comes first.

for example:
오늘 저녁에
[today evening in]
건락부에 서
[kurakbueso the club in]
모임이 있다.
[meeting is]

This evening there is a meeting in the club.

explanation:
The object expressing time 오늘 저녁에 comes before the object expressing place 건락부에서.

237 4. The position of the quotation
The quotation usually comes between the object and the predicate.

for example:
장 사는 자기 이름을
[chonsanun chagi irumul the soldier own name]
박철수라고 보고 하였다.
pakcholsurago pogohayotda]
Pak Chol Su as reported.

The soldier reported his own name as Pak Chol Su.

explanation:
* 박철수+라+고 (박철수-noun 라-low declarative form of
The final ending of the verbal form 고-connecting ending

The quotation 박철수라고 comes between the object 자기 이름을 and the predicate 보고하였다.

The expanded quotation comes before the object in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:
그는 저녁식사 전에 집에 [kunun chonyoksajone chibe he supper before the house to 가야하므로 돌아가겠다고* kayahamuro toragagetdago has to go as would go back that 나에게 말했다.
naege malhaetda]
me to said

explanation:
* The expanded quotation 저녁식사 전에 집에 가야하므로 돌아가겠다고 comes before the object 나에게 in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

238 5. The position of the adverbial modifier
The adverbial modifier usually comes after the subject, object and quotation.

for example:
만경봉에 아침노을이 [mangyongbong.e achimnouri Mangyong Hill on the morning glow 아름답게 pichiyotda] beautifully shone

explanation:
* 아름답게다[arumdap da] beautiful

The morning glow beautifully shone on Mangyong Hill.
The adverbial modifier 아름답게 comes after the object 만경봉에 and the subject 아침노울이.


For example:

물론* 그도 옵니다. [mullon kudo omnida] of course, he’s coming, too.

Explanation:

*The modal adverbial modifier 물론 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

When two adverbial modifiers lie side by side before the predicate, the positions of the two adverbial modifiers are interchangeable.

For example:

○ 그는 말 없이* 조용히
[kunun maropsi choyong-i he without word still]

일을 다그쳤다.
[irul taguchotda] the work hurried up

He hurried up the work in silence.

Explanation:

* 말 + 없이
noun adverb

○ 그는 조용히
[kunun choyong-i he still]

말 없이 일을
[maropsi irul without word the work]

He hurried up the work in silence.
다그쳤다.

hurried up

explanation:
The positions of the two adverbial modifiers 뒤에 and 조용히 are interchangeable.
The adverbial modifier -적으로 [-joguro] usually comes before another adverbial modifier.

for example:
그는 부모에게
[kunun pumoege
he the parents to
편지를
pyonjirul
the letter
정상적으로*
chongsangjoguro
a regular way in
쪽을
ggok ssunda
surely writes

explanation:
*The adverbial modifier 정상적으로 comes before another adverbial modifier 쪽.

He regularly writes the letter to his parents without fail.

239 6. The position of the attribute

The attribute always comes before the part of sentence which it qualifies.

for example:
이 애가 저의*딸입니다.
[i aega choui ddarimnida
this child my daughter is

explanation:
*The attribute 저의 lies before the verbal form 딸입니다 of the noun 딸.

When two attributes lie side by side, their positions are in-
terchangeable in consideration of their syntactic relations to the part of sentence which lies after them.

for example:

○ 민 경 제*
  [inmin-gyongje]
  national economy of
모든 부문
modun  pumun]
all branch

explanation:
* The attribute 민경제 is in the form of absolute case of genitive 민경제의 of the noun 민경제.

○ 모든
  [modun
  all
인민경제 부문
inmin-gyongje pumun]
the national economy of
  the branch

explanation:
The positions of the attributes 민경제 and 모든 are interchangeable.

When there are a verbal attribute and an adjectival attribute side by side, the verbal attribute comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

잠자는*1  귀여운*2  에 기  sleeping lovely baby
[chamjanun  kwiyoun  aegi]
sleeping  lovely  baby

explanation:
*1 잠자 + 다[chamja da] sleep
  stem  ending
잡사는 (는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

*2 까월 + 다 [kwiyop da] lovely stem ending

까여우 + 우 + [ ( Languages-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense) after exchanging the sound 우 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196) ]

까여우 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound INCLUDING) The verbal attribute 잡사는 comes before the adjectival attribute 까여우.

When an attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive goes side by side with an adjectival attribute, the attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

당 원 의*1 고 귀 한*2 영 엘이 [tang·wonui kogwiha yong·e] a party member of noble honour

the noble hon our of a party member

explanation:

*1 당 원 + 의 noun genitive ending

*2 고귀하다 [kogwiha da] noble stem ending

고귀한 + 우 (Languages-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense) The attribute 당원의 in the form of the genitive of the noun 당원 comes before the adjectival attribute 고귀한.

When an adjectival attribute lies side by side with an attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal pronoun, the adjectival attribute comes before the attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal

317
pronoun.

for example:

영광스러운
[yong gwangsuroun] glorious
우리 조국
[uri choguk] our fatherland

explanation:

*1 영광스럽다 [yong gwangsurop da] glorious

stem ending

영광스러운 + 다 [(L-attribute ending of the adjective in its present tense) after exchanging the sound ᄒ for the syllable ᄀ (refer to 196)]

영광스러운 (after contracting the syllable ᄀ and the sound L)

*2 The attribute 우리 is in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리. The adjectival attribute 영광스러운 lies before the attribute 우리 in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리.

The expanded attribute comes before another attribute in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

나라와 인민의
[narawa inminui] the country and the people of
재산을 앗기고
chaesanul aggigo

the property sparing and

사랑하는 사랑한 품성
[saranghanun kosanghan pumsong] loving noble character

explanation:

*1 사랑하다 [sarangha da] love

stem ending

the noble character of loving and setting store by the property of the country and people
사랑하다는 (은 attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

*2 고상하다 [kosangha da] noble stem ending

고상하다 (는 attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

고상한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 

The expanded attribute 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 comes before another attribute 고상한.

240 7. The position of the form of address, exclamatory word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier

The form of address, exclamatory word, conjunctive or appended modifier usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

어머니.* 아버지가
[omoni abojiga
mother father
dwā oṣīmida] comes back

explanation:

* The form of address 어머니 lies at the beginning of the sentence.
The form of address or an exclamatory word comes also at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 아버지가
[abojiga
father
dwā oṣīmida] comes back.

어머니.*Mother! Father is back.
[omoni]

Father is back, mother!
**explanation:**
* The exclamatory word 어머니 comes at the end of the sentence.

우리 기어이 그대 풍으로
[uri kioi kudae pumuro] we surely your bosom to
dol a gariria
go back will
어머니 조국이여*
[omonijogugiyo] mother fatherland!

**explanation:**
* 어머니 + 조국 + 이여 noun vocative ending
The form of address 어머니 조국이여 comes at the end of the sentence.

When the conjunctive performs its function of connecting two parts of sentence, it comes between them.

너와 나 그리고* 그는
[nowa na kurigo kunun] you and I and he
함께 간다.
hamgge kanda]
together go

**explanation:**
* The conjunctive 그리고 comes between the subject 나 and the subject 그.

LESSON 16

THE KINDS OF SENTENCES

241 Korean sentences are classified into five kinds ac-
According to the state of things and the viewpoint of the speaker—declarative, interrogative, suggestive, imperative and exclamatory.

1. The declarative sentence

A declarative sentence expresses some statement in the affirmative or negative form.

For example:

저는 대학생입니다.  I am a student.
[chonun taehaksaeng.imnida]  a student am

1) The declarative sentence contains the following contents of statement:

(1) Some phenomenon, result or fact:

For example:

어린 이들은 알 날의
[orinidurun amnarui  The children are
the children the future of
주인 들이 다.  masters of the future.
chuidurida]
the masters are

(2) Some work or action to be done obligatorily:

For example:

우리는
[urun we
로동안전규정을
rodong. anjon. gyujong. ul
the labour safety regulation
지켜야 한다.  keep must
chikyoya handa]

(3) The estimation of some fact:
for example:
너는 공부를 잘 하였다.  You have studied well.
[nonun kongburul chal hayotda]
you the study well did

(4) The determination or intention of the speaker:
for example:
래일 져는 영국으로  Tomorrow I will return
tomorrow I England to
d 돌아가겠습니까.  to return will
toragagetsunnida

(5) The promise of the speaker to the person addressed:
for example:
래일 다시 오마.* Tomorrow I will come
[raeil tasi oma] again will
tomorrow again come will

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 마(마-low declarative form of the final ending of
the verb)
The low declarative form of the final ending of the
verb 마 expresses the promise of an action foreseen in
the future.

(6) The affirmation or negation of some fact or the
word of some person:
① When the interrogator is superior to the person
addressed:
for example:
동무는 가요?  Are you going?
[tongmunun kao]
comrade go?
○ 너는 가니? [nonun kani]
you go?

예. [ye] Yes.

Explanation:
예 is the answer that one will go.
아니요. [aniyo] No.

Explanation:
아니 + 요
(아니-verb of negation 요-middle declarative
form of the final ending of the verbal form)
아니요 is the answer that one will not go.

○ 동무는 안 가오? [tongmunun an-gao]
comrade not go?

Explanation:
* 안 + 가다 [an-gada] not go
(안-verb of negation 가다-verb)
안 + 가 + 요 (요-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 너는 안 가니*? [nonun an-gani]
you not go?

Explanation:
* 안 + 가 니다
( بالأ-low interrogative form of the
final ending of the verb)
예. [ye] yes.

Explanation:
예 is the answer that one will not go.
The answer 예 is the affirmation of “not go?”. In this case the answer in English would be “no”.
아니요, [aniyo] No.

**explanation:**
아니요 is the answer that one will go.
The answer 아니요 is the negation of “not go?”
In this case the answer in English would be “yes”

② When the interrogator and the person addressed are on an equal footing:

for example:

○ (between friends)

동무는 가나?
[tongmunun kana] go?

阿 are you going?

○ (between children)

너는 가니?
[nonun kani] go?

등, [ung] yes.

**explanation:**

是 the answer of one who will go.

아니, [ani] No.

**explanation:**

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

○ (between friends)

동무는 안가나?
[tongmunun an-gana] go?

阿 aren’t you going?

* 암+가나 [an gada] not go

(안—verb of negation 가다—verb)

(나—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
○ (between children)
너는 안 가니*?
[nonun angani]
you not go?

Aren't you going?

explanation:
* 안+가다
안+가+니 (나—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
음[ung] Yes.

explanation:
어니 is the answer of one who will not go.
The answer 어니 is the affirmation of “not go? ”.
In this case the answer in English would be “no”.

아니.[a ni] No.

explanation:
아니 is the answer of one who will go.
The answer 아니 is the negation of “not go? ”.
In this case the answer in English would be “yes”.

③ When the interrogator is inferior to the person addressed:

for example:
○ 당신은 가 싶니까?
[tangsinun kasimnigga]
you go?

Are you going?

○ 아버지는 가 싶니까?
[abojinun kasimnigga]
father goes?

Are you going, father?

음.[ung] Yes.

explanation:
어니 is the answer of one who will go.

아니.[ani] No.

325
explanation:
아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

O 당신은 안 가 싶니가?
[ tangsinun you
an. gasimnigga]
not go?

explanation:
* 안+가다
안+가+시+비니가
시-ending of respect 비니가-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb
안가싶니가(after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 비)

O 아버지의 안가 싶니가?
[ abojinun an. gasimnigga]
father does not go?

응.[ung] Yes.

explanation:
응 is the answer of one who will not go.
The answer 응 is the affirmation of “not go?”
In this case the answer in English would be “no”.

아니. [ani] No.

explanation:
아니 is the answer of one who will go.
The answer 아니 is the negation of “not go.”
In this case the answer in English would be “yes”.

(7) The declarative sentence only shows that there is a certain object.

for example:
군중의 물결, [ kungjung-ui bulgyol
the masses of the wave
the streams of the masses, the cheers of joy
기쁨의 환호.
kibbumui hwanho]
joy of the cheer

2) The characteristics of the declarative sentence
The final predicate of the declarative sentence is usually expressed in the declarative form.

for example:
나는 조국으로
[nanun choguguro
I the fatherland to
dol a gan da.*
toraganda]
go back

I go back to the fatherland.

explanation:
* 돌아가다 [toraga da] go back
stem ending
돌아가다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)
dol a gan da is the declarative form of the verb 돌아가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the declarative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:
저녁 8시부터
[chonyok yodolsibuto
evening 8 o’clock from
회의가 있음*.
hoeuiga issum]
the meeting to be
There is a meeting at 8 o’clock in the evening.

explanation:
* 있 + 다 [it da] be
stem ending
The final predicate 음 is the substantive form of the verb 있다.

243 2. The interrogative sentence

The interrogative sentence means that the speaker asks another person something.

For example:
언제 당신 을
[onje tangsinun
when you
조국으로
choguguro
the fatherland to
돌아가 싶니가?
toragasimnigga]
return?

When do you return to the fatherland?

1) The interrogative sentences are classified as follows according to their function and contents:

(1) The interrogative sentence which requires an answer from the person addressed

The affirmation of some fact:

for example:
당신은 통역 원이니가?
[tangsinun tong-yogwon imnigga]
you an interpreter are?

예.
[ye]
yes

Are you an interpreter?

Yes.

(2) The answer to a concrete fact:

for example:
몇 시 입니까?
[myotsiimnigga]
how much time is?

What time is it?
5 시입니다.  
[tasotsiimnida]
five o'clock is

(2) The interrogative sentence which doesn't require an answer from the person addressed
① It is required that the person addressed does some action.

for example:
애들아, 왜 들 아직
[aedura waedul ajik
children! why yet
학교에 안 가니?
hakgyo-e an·gani]
school to not go?

Children! Why haven’t you gone to school yet?

explanation:
* 애 + 들
adverb plural ending
The plural ending 들 is attached to the adverb 애 in order to emphasize the plural of “children”.
The interrogative sentence has the instruction that the children should quickly go to school.

② A strong affirmation or negation for some fact is expressed.

for example:
너는 갈 수 없단 말이나? [nonun kalsu opdanmarinya]
you go can not?

Can’t you go?

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 두 + 수 없다.

(이 -attributive ending of the verb in its future
tense 수 -incomplete noun 없다 -adjective)
2) The characteristics of the interrogative sentence

The final predicate of the interrogative sentence is usually expressed in the interrogative form.

for example:

당신은 영국 사람입니까?  
[yong guksaramiminigga]  Are you an English?

you are an English?

explanation:

* 염국 사람 입 니 까?  
[exchanging ending 니 까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

영국 사람 입니 까 is the interrogative form of the verbal form of the noun 영국 사람.

But in some cases the final predicate of the interrogative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

너가 나의 친구의 아들 이 라 니?  
[nega naui chin-gu-ui adurirani]  As you are the son of my friend, I am very glad.

son are as?
explanation:
* 아들 +이 +라 +니 (아들 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 니 - connecting ending of cause)
The final predicate 아들이라니 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 아들

244. The suggestive sentence

The suggestive sentence means that the speaker requires the person addressed to do some action together with him.

for example:
동무 들 잡시 다. | Comrades, let us go!
[tongmudul kapsida]
comrades let us go

1) The suggestive sentence contains the following:
(1) It is required to do some action together.

for example:
동무 들 춤을 춤시다. | Comrades, let us dance!
[tongmudul chumul chupsida]
comrades a dance let us dance

(2) The person addressed is required to do some action.

for example:
박동무 좀 좀 | Comrade Pak, read a
[pakdongmu chom] little slowly
Pak comrade a little
(3) One's own determination or one's own aim is expressed.
for example:
파학자가 되자! (kwahakjaga toeja)
scientist let us become
이것이 나의 결심이었다. (igosi naui kyolsimiyotda)
it my determination was
To become a scientist!
It was my determination.

2) The characteristics of the suggestive sentence
The final predicate of the suggestive sentence is expressed in the suggestive form.

for example:
동무들, 노래합시다.* (tongmudul noraehapsida)
comrades, let us sing

explanation:
* 노래하다 [noraeha da] sing
stem ending
노래하여 비시다
(after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 비)
노래합시다 is the suggestive form of the verb 노래하다.
The suggestive sentence has its particular accent.
(1) The tone is even at the end of the sentence.
for example:
가자! (kaja)
let us go!

Let us go!
(2) The tone is even and short at the end of the sentence when a determination or aim is expressed.

for example:
동무 들. 혁명을
[ tongmudul hyongmyong-ul ]
comrades the revolution
위하여 우리와
uihayo uriwa
for us with
함께 싸울 시다.
hangge ssapsida]
together let us fight

Comrades, let us
fight together for the
revolution!

(3) When high requirements are expressed, the tone is loud and strong at the end of the sentence.

for example:
○ 자주성을 원하였습니다.
[chajusong-ul onghohaja]
Chajusong let us defend
○ 원수를 소멸하자.
[wonsurul somyolhaja]
the enemy let us annihilate

Let us defend
Chajusong!
Let us smash the
enemy!

(4) When a recommendation or the request is expressed, the tone is relatively low and soft at the end of the sentence.

for example:
여기에서
[yogieso this place in
이 야기를 할 자.
iyagirul haja]
the talk let us do

Let us talk here!

245 4. The imperative sentence
The imperative sentence means that the speaker makes the person addressed do a certain action.

for example:
unkt ddonasio
at once leave!

| Leave at once! |

1) The imperative sentence contains the following:
(1) An order, instruction, prohibition or appeal is expressed.

for example:
자 게.
[chage]
sleep!

| Sleep! |

explanation:
자 + 다 [cha dal] sleep
stem ending
자 + 게
(게-middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) Congratulations, a wish or a hope is expressed.

for example:
안녕히 가 싶 시 오.
[annyong-i kasipsio]
well go!

| Good-bye! |

(3) A request, recommendation or permission is expressed.

for example:
그렇게 하 시 오.
[kuroke hasio]
do!

| Do so! |
2) The characteristics of the imperative sentence
The final predicate of the imperative sentence is usually expressed in the imperative form.

for example:

ベルリ 가라*  
[bballi kara]  
quickly go!

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + 라  
(拉—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
가라 is the imperative form of the verb 가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the imperative sentence can be expressed in other forms.
(1) In the form of 드것 [lgot]
for example:
모두 모일것*  
[modu moilgot]  
all gather!

explanation:
* 모이 + 다 [moi da] gather  
stem ending  
모이 + 드 + 것  
( 드—attributive ending of the verb in its future tense  
것—incomplete noun)
모일것 (after contracting the syllable 드 and the sound 것)
The final predicate 모일것 is in the form of 드것.

(2) Without ending
for example:
Hurry up!

*The final predicate 빨리 is without ending.

(3) In the form of the instrumental of the noun

for example:

분대, 나를 따라 앞으로!

Squad! Forward after me!

following forward!

explanation:

* 앞 + 으로

noun link-vowel instrumental ending

The final predicate 앞으로 is in the form of the instrumental of the noun 앞.

(4) By attaching ↕ [s] to the connecting form of the verb ↓ [a]/ ↑ [o]/ ↔ [yo]

for example:

것.

Stop!

explanation:

서 + 다 [so da] stop

stem ending

서 + ↕

( après contracting the syllable 서 and the sound ↕ )

The final predicate ↕ is formed by attaching ↕ to the connecting form 서 of the verb 서다.

246 5. The exclamatory sentence

The exclamatory sentence expresses some kind of emo-
tion or feeling.

for example:
오, 조국의 바 다여! [o choguigo padayo] Oh, the sea of the fatherland!
oh the fatherland of the sea

1) The exclamatory sentence contains the following:
(1) An emotion is expressed differently.

for example:
아, 동해가 보입니다! [a tonghaega poinda] Ah, we see the East Sea!
ah the East Sea is seen!

The sentence which contains 만세 [manse] “hurrah” also belongs to the exclamatory sentence.

for example:
○ 만세! [manse] Hurrah!

○ 조선민주주의인민공화국 만세! [choson-minjuuui-inmin gonghwaguk manse] Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea!
Republic of Korea long live!

(2) Feelings such as respect, pride, congratulations, conviction and determination are expressed.

for example:
우리의 평양은 [uriui pyongyang-un our Pyongyang
참으로 몽창하구나*! chamuro unjanghaguna] truly magnificent!

Our Pyongyang is truly magnificent.
**explanation:**

* 응장하다 [ungjangha da] magnificent
  stem ending
응장하다 구나

(구나 - low declarative form of the final
ing ending of the adjective)

2) The characteristics of the exlamatory sentence
The exclamatory sentence has the emotional
accent.

for example:

동무들! 백두산이
[tongmu dul paekdusani
comrades! Mt. Paekdu
보입니다!]
poimnida]
is in sight!

Comrades! Here is Mt. Paekdu!

In many cases the exclamatory word is in the exclama-
tory sentence, too.

for example:

오, 조국이여!
[o chogugiyolo
oh fatherland!
영원히 번영하여라*!
yongwon ponyonghayora]
forever prosper!

Oh, fatherland!
Prosper forever!

**explanation:**

* 번영하다 [ponyongha da] prosperous
  stem ending
번영하다 여라

(여라 - low imperative form of the final ending
of the verb)
SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

247 Sentences are classified into simple, compound and complex sentences according to the structure.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

248 The simple sentence has only one declarative unit.

for example:
저는 기사입니다.  |  I am an engineer.
[chonun kisaimnida]  
an engineer am

explanation:
There is only one declarative unit in the sentence 저는 기사입니다.

The simple sentences are classified as follows:

1. The common simple sentence
   The common simple sentence consists of the parts of sentence in agreement.

   for example:
   우리를 평양으로 갑니다.  |  We go to Pyongyang.
   [urinun pyongyang.uro  
   we  Pyongyang to
   갑니다.  
kamnida]
   go

   explanation:
   우리는, 평양으로 and 갑니다 are the parts of sentence in agreement.

2. The one-member sentence
The one-member sentence consists of one word.

for example:
당신은 갑니다?  
[tangsinun kamnigga]  
you go?  
네.  
[ye]  
yes

explanation:

예 is the one-member sentence.

3. The sentence of denomination

This is a sentence in which the object, the phenomenon or state is denominated and affirmed.

for example:
○ 조선로동당  
[chosonrodongdang]  
the Workers’ Party of Korea

○ 제 13 차 세계 청년 학생 축전  
[chesipsamcha.segye.chongnyonhaksaeng.chukjon]  
the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students

4. The elliptical sentence

for example:
우리도 레일로…”  
[urinun raeil]  
we tomorrow
받차로 평양으로…”  
pamcharo pyongyang.uro  
night train to Pyongyang...

“... to Pyongyang by night train tomorrow.”

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE
AND COMPLEX SENTENCE

249 The compound sentence and complex sentence have two
or more declarative units in the sentence.

1. The compound sentence
The compound sentence consists of two or more co-
ordinated simple sentences.

for example:
그는 어제 도착하고, He arrived yesterday, 
저는 오늘 도착했습니다. and I arrived 
[kunun oje tochakago
chrung onul tochakaetsumnida] 
he yesterday arrived and
I today arrived

explanation:
The declarative units, 그는 어제 도착하고 and 저는 오늘 도착했습니다, in the sentence 그는 어제 도착하고 저는 오늘 도착했습니다 are connected to each other by the copulative connect-
ing ending 교. But they have the same qualification.

2. The complex sentence
The complex sentence consists of a main declarative 
unit and one or more subordinate declarative units.

for example:
래일 날씨가, If the weather is
tomorrow the weather
좋으면 나는 떠나겠다. fine tomorrow,
그음 몽 나는 떠나겠다. I will leave.
[choumyon nanun ddonagetda]
good when I leave will

explanation:
The declarative units, 래일 날씨가 좋으면 and 나는 떠나겠다, in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 나는 떠나겠다 are connect-
ed to each other by the connecting ending 면.
THE ORDER OF THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE
AND THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

250 In Korean the subordinate clause always lies before the principal clause.

for example:

예일 날씨가 좋으면 우리는 떠나겠습니다.

tomorrow the weather good when we leave will

When the weather is fine tomorrow, we will leave.

explanation:
The subordinate clause 예일 날씨가 좋으면 lies before the principal clause 우리는 떠나겠습니다 in the sentence 예일 날씨가 좋으면 우리는 떠나겠습니다.

DIRECT SPEECH

251 Direct speech conveys the original speaker’s exact words.

for example:

《가자!》 그는 말하였다. He said: “Let us go!”

[ko] [kunun malhayotda] “let us go!” he said

explanation:

*교 is the copulative connecting ending.
The original speaker’s words in direct speech are connected to the principal clause as follows:

1. The endings such as 교 [ko], 라고[rago] and 라[ra] come after the original speaker’s words.
The word such as 하고[hago] and 이뤄께[iroke] “so” comes after the original speaker’s words.

The original speaker’s words are connected to the principal clause without any means.

The original speaker’s words can lie before the principal clause, in the middle of the principal clause or after the principal clause.

He asked me:

“Where are you going?”
2. The original speaker’s words come in the middle of the principal clause.

He asked me: “Where are you going?”

3. The original speaker’s words lie after the principal clause.

He asked me: “Where are you going?”
after the principal clause 그는 나에게 몰였다.

INDIRECT SPEECH

253 Indirect speech reports in one’s own words what somebody has said.

for example:

그는 오겠다고 말하였다. He said that he would come.

[kunun ogedago malhayotda] 
he come would that said

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 겠 + 다 + 고
(/octet-ending of the future tense 다-low declarative
form of the final ending of the verb 고-copulative
connecting ending)

THE CHANGING OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

254 Direct speech is changed into indirect speech according to the following rules:

1. Person, time, place and direction of the direct speech are changed in conformity with the reporter’s point of view.

for example:

〇 Direct speech
그는 “저도 공부할 거야.”
he “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”
[kunun chodo raei] 

He said: “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”
He said that he would also come to the library the next day.

○ Indirect speech
그는 자기도*1
[kunun chagido
he own also
day 다음날*2 도서관에
daumnal tosogwane
next day the library to
오겠습니다*3고
ogedago come would that
말하였다.
malhayotda] said

explanation:
*1 저도 in direct speech is changed into 자기도 in indirect speech.
*2 레일 in direct speech is changed into 다음날 in indirect speech.
*3 가겠습니다 indirect speech is changed into 오겠습니다 in indirect speech.

2. The different forms of courtesy in direct speech are changed into the low form of courtesy in indirect speech.

for example:
○ Direct speech
그는 저도 레일
[kunun chodo raeil
he "I also tomorrow

He said: “I will also
go to the library
tomorrow.”
도서관에 가겠습니까:*  
dosogwane kagetsumnida  
the library to go will"  
라고 말하였다.  
rago malhayotda]  
said

○ Indirect speech

그는 자기도  
[kunun chagido  
he own also  
다음날 도서관에  
daumnal dosogwane  
next day the library to  
오겠다고* 말하였다.  
ogtdago malhayotda]  
come would that said

He said that he would  
also come to the library  
the next day.

explanation:

* 가겠습니까 in direct speech is the most deferential form  
of courtesy. 오겠다 in indirect speech is the low form  
of courtesy.

3. The forms of address, exclamatory words and some  
other expressions in direct speech are changed into  
other expressions.  
for example:

○ Direct speech

그는  ≈아*, 우리  
[kunun a uri  
he “ah our  
조국은 얼마나  
chogugun olmana  
fatherland how  
아름다운가!  
arumdaun ga rago  
beautiful!”  
말하였다.  
malhayotda]  
said

He said: “Ah, how  
beautiful our father-land is!”
Indirect speech
그는 우리 조국은 찬미하다고 말하였다. 
[kunun uri chogugun he our fatherland
참으로 아름다다고
chamuro arumadapdago truly beautiful that
말하였다.
mahayotda] said
He said that our fatherland was truly beautiful.

explanation:
* The exclamatory word 아 in the direct speech is changed into the adverbial modifier 참으로 in the indirect speech.
for example:

Direct speech
그는 《박동무*.
[kunun pakdongmu he “Pak comrade
모 임이 끝났습니까?”
moomi ggunnatsumnigga
the meeting finished?”
라고 물었다.
rago murotda]
asked
He asked: “Comrade Pak, is the meeting over?”

Indirect speech
그는 박동무에게* 
[kunun pakdongmu
he Pak comrade to
모 임이
moomi
the meeting
끝났는가요 물었다.
ggunnannun gago murotda]
finished whether asked
He asked Comrade Pak whether the meeting was over.

explanation:
* 박동무 in direct speech is changed into 박동무에게 in indirect speech.
4. The original speaker’s words in more than one sentence in direct speech are changed into one quotation in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

["뜻했다. 빨리가라!* 고 "late is fast go!"

그는 말하였다.

kunun malhayotda]

he said

○ Indirect speech

इ त न य व ख र इ क र ग [nujotdau bballi karago
late is as fast go! that

그는 말하였다.

kunun malhayotda]

he said

He said that I had to hurry up as it was late.

explanation:
* The original speaker’s words in two sentences, 늦었다 and 빨리 가라 in direct speech are changed into one quotation phrase 늦으니 빨리 가라고 in indirect speech.

5. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech. 하고[hago] or 아喆게[iroke] “so” which are used as means of connecting the original speaker’s words and the principal clause are also omitted.

for example:

○ Direct speech

["비가 온다." 그는

이렇게 말하였다.

iroke malhayotda]

He said:

“It’s raining.”

349
○ Indirect speech
그는 비가 온다고 말하였다.
He said that it was raining.

*explanation:*
The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech.
The word 이랑계 in direct speech is omitted in indirect speech.

### TABLES OF ENDINGS

#### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE NOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>깨서[ggeso], 가[ga]/이[i]</td>
<td>깨서[ggeso], 이[i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>물[rul] (물)[l]/ 였[ul]</td>
<td>였[ul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>깨[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]</td>
<td>깨[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of the word to be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declined</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가 [ga]</td>
<td>가 [ga]/아 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>둘 [rul]</td>
<td>둘 [rul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와 [wa]</td>
<td>과 [gwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여 [yo]</td>
<td>여 [yo]/이여 [iyo]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN
TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN WHICH INDICATES PLACE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가[ga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>루[ru] (מיר[1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>예[e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에서[eso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로[ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>와[wa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여[yo], 야[ya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>ending which is used as the case ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>래[iran]/이라[iran]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>더러[doro], 한데[hante]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>래[rang]/이라[irang], 하고[hago]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>보다[boda], 처럼[chorom],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>마냥[manyang], 마다[mada]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy for the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>the most deferential form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 슬니다 [sum nida] / 비니다 [mnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) 담니다 [damnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 슬디다 [sup tida] / 비디다 [ptida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4) 담디다 [daptida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5) 야요 [ayo] / 여요 [ooyo] / 여요 [oyo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6) 지 [ji]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7) 야 [a] / 여 [yo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8) 는걸 [nungeol], 멤걸 [don-gol], 였걸 [lokol]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9) 는 걸 [nunde], 멤 걸 [donde], 였 걸 [lok]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10) 더니 [doni], 더나니 [dorna ni]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the adjective and verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>더러니까 [doraniga] 11) 거던 [godon] 12) 리 [ri], 리라 [rira], 리다 [rida] 13) 다구야 [daguya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) 뉘걸 [n-gol]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 뉘데 [nde]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verb</td>
<td>1) 누나 [nuna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 뉘게 [lge], 뉘래 [llae]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) 뉘나 [nuna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) 뉘라 [lla]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 마 [ma]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the adjective</td>
<td>뉘시고 [lsigo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 랠니다 [ramnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) 랠디다 [raptida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 야요 [yayo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) 요 [yo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) 라오 [rao]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 라네 [rane]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4) 로군, 로구만 [rogun], [roguman]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5) 야 [ya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6) 라구야 [raguya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) 라 [ra], 란다 [randa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) 로다 [roda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 로구나 [roguna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy for</td>
<td>the most deferential form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>2) 타니까 [damnigga] 3) 승디까 [suptigga] 4) 담디까 [daptigga] 5) 리까 [rigga]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| the adjec-tive and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral | 람디까 [ramnigga], 람디까 [raptigga] | 라지 [raji] | 냐 [nya] |
TABLE OF THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) 비시다[psida]</td>
<td>1) 세[se]</td>
<td>1) 자[ja]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 자꾸요[jaguyo], 자요[jayo]</td>
<td>2) 부세[pse]</td>
<td>2) 자꾸나[jagguna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 자구[jagu]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE OF THE IMPERATIVE FINAL
ENDINGS OF THE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) 십시오[sipsio], 세요[seyo]</td>
<td>1) 시오[sio]</td>
<td>1) 라[ra]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 라구요[raguyo], 라요[rayo]</td>
<td>2) 게[ge]</td>
<td>2) 아라[ara]/여라[ora]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 구려[guryo], 라구[ragu]</td>
<td>3) 력무나[ryomuna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4) 력[ryom], 력아[ryoma]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE OF THE CONNECTING ENDINGS OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>classification</th>
<th>connecting ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>(1) 고[go]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 며[myo], 면서[myonso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) 브뿐더리[lbbundore]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) 거니와[goniwa], 력니와[ryoniwa]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **adversative** | (1) 나[na], 되[doe]  
(2) 지만[jiman], 지마는[jimanun], 전만[gonman], 전마는[gonmanun],  
련만[ryonman],  
련마는[ryonmanun]  
(3) 놔데[nde], 눈데[nunde],  
텐데[donde]  
(4) 놔바[nba], 눈바[nunba] |
| **disjunctive** | (1) 나[na], 전[gon], 드[dun]  
(2) 거나[gona], 드지[dunji],  
드가[dun-ga]  
(3) 거니[goni], 브라[lla] |
| **subordinative** | **condition** | (1) 면[myon], 거든[godun],  
느라면[nuramyon], 더라면[doramyon],  
느라면[lamyon], 자면[jamyon]  
(2) 아도[ado]/어도[odo]/여도[yodo], 더라도[dorado]  
(3) 르 망정[lmangjong],  
르 지연정[ljianjong],  
르 지라도[ljirado]  
(4) 기로[giro],  
기로서니[girosoni]  
(5) 램돌[ndul], 덴돌[dondul]  
(6) 나마[nama]  
(7) 야야[aya]/어야[oya]/  
여야[yoya] |
| **cause** | (1) 므로[muro]  
(2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga],  
느라니[nurani],  
느라니까[nuranigga] |

# Table of the Attributive Endings of the Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributive ending of the adjective</th>
<th>Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ᵌ[n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ᵅ[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ᵨ[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Table of the Attributive Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</th>
<th>Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ᵌ[n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ᵅ[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ᵨ[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Table of the Endings of the Adverbial Modifier of the Verb or Adjective

1. 게 [ge], 도록 [dorok]
2. 드[dt], 드어[duisi]
3. ㄹ수록 [lsurok]
### TABLE OF THE TENSE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense ending</th>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zero ending</td>
<td>앖[at], 엣[ot], 엣[jot]</td>
<td>엣[ot]</td>
<td>엣[get]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDING OF RESPECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of respect</th>
<th>시[si]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE VOICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice</th>
<th>passive form</th>
<th>causative form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>되[i], 헌[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 기우[giu], 헌우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu]</td>
<td>되[i], 헌[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 구[gu]</td>
<td>되[i], 헌[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 구[gu]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>exchanging ending</th>
<th>verbal form</th>
<th>substantive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>되[i]</td>
<td>되[i]</td>
<td>되[i]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ending</td>
<td>auxiliary ending</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of inclusion</td>
<td>도[do] also,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>마저[majo] also,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>조차[jocha] also</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of restriction</td>
<td>만[man] only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of limitation</td>
<td>부터[buto] from,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>까지[ggaji] till</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of indication</td>
<td>는<a href="L%5Bn%5D">nun</a>/은[un]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of emphasis</td>
<td>야[ya]/이야[iya]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of concession</td>
<td>나[na]/이나[ina],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>나마[nama]/이나마[inama],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>라도[rado]/이라도[irado]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of negation</td>
<td>커녕[konyong]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBJECT INDEX

The numerals indicate the paragraphs and others indicate the pages.

- absolute tenses 162 ..................................... 216
- accusative 18 ........................................... 80
- active voice 175 ....................................... 230
- adjective 76 ............................................. 124
- adverb 126 ............................................... 175
- adverbial modifier 209 ................................ 286
- adversative connecting endings 131 .................. 181
- agreement of parts of sentence 229 ................... 303
- agreement in expressions of respect and courtesy 230 .................................... 304
- agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of sentence 231 ......................... 307
- agreement in interrogative words and other parts of sentence 232 .......................... 307
- agreement in the forms of address and other parts of sentence 233 ......................... 308
- appended modifier 221 ................................ 298
- attribute 211 ............................................. 289
- attributive form of the verb 147 ....................... 202
- attributive form of the adjective 149 ............... 206
- attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 151 ................. 208
- auxiliary endings 185 .................................. 242
- cardinal numbers 115 .................................. 162
- causative form 177 ...................................... 233
- change of sounds 12 ..................................... 24
- changing of direct speech into indirect speech 254 ............................................. 345
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classification of the predicates</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound sentence and complex sentence</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conjunctive</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting endings of condition</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting endings of cause</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting endings of order</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting endings of method or means</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting endings of purpose or intention</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting ending of negation</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consonants</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative connecting endings</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copulative connecting endings</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counting words</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy of the final ending of the verb</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy of the final ending of the adjective</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarative final endings to the verb</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarative final endings to the adjective</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarative sentence</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• declension of a word which ends in a vowel
  26 ........................................................................ 87
• declension of a word which ends in a consonant 27 ............................................. 88
• declension of a noun in the plural 28 ................................................................. 89
• declension of a word in the plural to which a sense of respect is given 29 ........... 90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an animate being 30 .......... 90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an inanimate being 31 .......... 91
• declension of the personal pronoun 나[na] “I” 40 ................................................... 98
• declension of the personal pronoun 저[cho] “I” 41 .................................................. 98
• declension of the personal pronoun 나[na] “I” 42 ................................................. 99
• declension of the personal pronoun 저회[chohui] “we” 43 ................................... 99
• declension of the personal pronoun 우리[uri] “we” 44 .......................................... 100
• declension of the personal pronoun 너[no] “you” 45 ........................................... 101
• declension of the personal pronoun 너희[nohui] “you” 46 .................................. 102
• declension of the noun 당신[tangsin] “you” 47 ..................................................... 103
• declension of 그[ku] “he” 48 ........................................................................... 104
• declension of 그녀자[ku nyoja] “she” 49 ................................................................. 105
• declension of 그것[kugot] “it” 50 ......................................................................... 105
• declension of 그들[kudul] “they” 51 ..................................................................... 105
• declension of 그녀자들[ku nyojadul] “they” 52 ..................................................... 106
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expanded subject</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expanded object</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expanded quotation</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expanded adverbial modifier</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expanded attribute</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the voice in another way</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the object</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the quotation</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the adverbial modifier</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the attribute</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the form of address</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the parenthesis</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the exclamatory word</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expression of the conjunctive</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final ending of the verb</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final ending of the adjective</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form of address</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formation of the adverb from the adjective</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forms of the verb</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forms of the adjective</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gender and article are'n't</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive of the personal pronoun</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, she, it, they</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative final endings of the verb</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative sentence</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incomplete noun</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indirect speech</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interjection</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative final endings to the verb</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative final endings to the adjective</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative final endings to the verbal form</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative pronoun</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative sentence</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intonation of a sentence</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kinds of sentences</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean alphabet</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean alphabet table</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>link-vowels 오 [i] and 오[u]</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood of the final ending of the verb</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood of the final ending of the adjective</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood of the final ending of the verbal form</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeral</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the predicate</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the subject</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the genitive</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the object</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• order of the genitive of the personal pronoun .......................... 108
• order of the adjectively used demonstrative pronoun .................. 115
• order of the attribute ......................................................... 116
• order of the adverbial modifier ............................................. 116
• order of the declarative final form of the verb in the sentence .... 145
• order of the declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence 146
• order of the declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence .................. 146
• order of the interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence .... 158
• order of the interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence 159
• order of the interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence .................. 159
• order of the form of address in the sentence ........................... 161
• order of the interjection in the sentence .................................. 161
• order of the suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence ....... 173
• order of the adjectival cardinal number .................................. 174
• order of the connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral .................. 194
• order of the attributive form of the verb .................................. 213
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>order of the attributive form of the adjective</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the attributive form of the verbal form of</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the form of the adverbial modifier of the</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb or adjective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the pre-noun</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the interjection in the sentence</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the ending of the tense</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the ending of respect</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order of the principal clause and the subordinate</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clause in direct speech</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal numbers</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pairs of endings</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parenthesis</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parts of sentence</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passive voice</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal pronouns</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural of the noun</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural ending</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the adverb</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the predicate</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the subject</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the object</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the quotation</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the adverbial modifier</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the attribute</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position of the form of address, exclamatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier 240
predicate 201 .................................................. 269
pre-noun 143 .................................................... 200
pronunciation of vowels 6 .................................. 13
pronunciation of consonants 9 ............................. 16
quotation 207 ................................................... 283
relation between respect and courtesy 169 ............ 225
relation in the meaning between the connecting
predicate and the final predicate 203 .................. 273
relative tenses 163 ............................................ 218
respect 167 ..................................................... 223
simple vowels 4 ................................................. 13
simple part of sentence and expanded part of
sentence 198 ................................................... 267
simple part of sentence 199 ................................. 267
simple, compound and complex sentences
247 ............................................................... 339
simple sentence 248 .......................................... 339
stem and ending 191 ......................................... 251
subdivision of the final endings of the verb
75 ................................................................. 123
subdivision of the final endings of the adjective 82
................................................................. 130
subdivision of the final endings of the verbal
form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 89 ............. 137
subject 204 ...................................................... 276
subordinative connecting endings 133 .................. 184
suggestive final endings of the verb 119 .............. 170
suggestive sentence 244 .................................... 331
syllables 11 ..................................................... 22
• table of the endings of the case of the noun 32 .................................................. 92
• table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun 55 ................................. 108
• table of the demonstrative pronouns 59 ........... 111
• table of the endings of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates place 65 ........... 115
• table of the declarative final endings of the verb 91 .................................................. 140
• table of the declarative final endings of the adjective 93 .......................................... 143
• table of the declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 95 .......................................................... 145
• table of the interrogative pronouns 100 .......... 150
• table of the interrogative final endings of the verb 103 .............................................. 153
• table of the interrogative final endings of the adjective 105 ..................................... 155
• table of the interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 107 .......................................................... 158
• table of the suggestive final endings of the verb 120 ............................................... 171
• table of the imperative final endings of the verb 122 ............................................... 173
• table of the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 140 ................................................ 192
• table of the attributive endings of the verb 148 ......................................................... 206
• table of the attributive endings of the
adjective 150 ........................................... 208
- table of the attributive endings of the verbal
  form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 152 ........... 210
- table of the endings of the adverbial modifier
  of the verb or adjective 154 .......................... 213
- table of the tense endings 166 ........................ 222
- table of the ending of respect 171 ...................... 228
- table of endings of the voice 179 ...................... 236
- table of the exchanging endings 184 .................. 242
- table of auxiliary endings 188 ........................ 248
- table of the endings which are used as case
  endings 190 ........................................... 251
- tenses 161 ........................................... 216
- tenses which are expressed by other methods
  165 ............................................... 221
- use of the pre-noun 145 ................................ 201
- use of the exchanging endings 183 .................... 240
- using tense endings 164 ................................ 219
- verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral
  83 .................................................. 130
- vocal harmony 195 ................................... 258
- vocative 24 ......................................... 85
- voice 174 .......................................... 230
- vowels 3 ............................................ 13
- words which have the meaning of respect
  170 .................................................. 226
- writing of vowels 7 ................................... 16
- writing of consonants 10 ................................ 22
- you 당신[tangsin] 38 .................................. 97
# Abbreviations:

- **a**: adjective
- **ad**: adverb
- **ad fo**: adverbial form
- **att fo**: attributive form
- **aux end**: auxiliary ending
- **causat v**: causative verb
- **con fo**: connecting form
- **dat**: dative
- **end**: ending
- **gen**: genitive
- **imp fo**: imperative form
- **incomp n**: incomplete noun
- **inst**: instrumental
- **int**: interjection
- **loc**: locative
- **num**: numeral
- **pass**: passive
- **pl**: plural
- **pre-n**: pre-noun
- **pron**: pronoun
- **sg**: singular
- **v**: verb
- **vi**: intransitive verb
- **vt**: transitive verb

## Korean-English Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가극 [kaguk] n</td>
<td>opera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가늘다 [kanulda]</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능성 [kanungsong]</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가다 [kada] vi</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가두배추 [kadubaechu] n</td>
<td>cab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가득하다 [kadukada] a</td>
<td>full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가령 [karyong] ad</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치다 [karuchida] vt</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르침 [karuchim] n</td>
<td>teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가방 [kabang] n</td>
<td>bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가벼하다 [kabyopda] a</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가수 [kasu] n</td>
<td>singer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가슴 [kasum] n</td>
<td>breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가장 [kajang] ad</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가져다주다 [kajyodajuda] vt</td>
<td>bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가져오다 [kajyoolda] vt</td>
<td>bring; fetch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가족 [kajok] n</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지 [kaji] n</td>
<td>branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지다 [kajida] vt</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가재 [kaje] n</td>
<td>gauze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가재담배 [kachidambaec] n</td>
<td>ciga.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가책 [kachaek] n</td>
<td>remorse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까이 [kaggai] ad</td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가을 [kaul] n</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>각서 [kakso] n</td>
<td>note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>각서교환 [kaksogyohwan] n</td>
<td>exchange of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간고하다 [kan-go-hada] a</td>
<td>arduous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간장 [kanjang] n</td>
<td>soy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간판 [kanpan] n</td>
<td>sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간호원 [kanhowon] n</td>
<td>nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간이식당 [kanisikdang] n</td>
<td>snack</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
간다 [kalda] vt till
갈라지다 [kallajida] vi divide
갈림길 [kallimgil] n forked road
감기 [kamgi] n cold
감기 들다 [kamgi dulda] phrase catch cold
감다 [kamda] vt wind
감사 [kamsa] n thank
감탄하다 [kamthanhadada] vi admire
값 [kap] n price
강 [kang] n river
강냉이 [kangnaeng-i] n maize
강령 [kangryong] n programme
강물 [kangmul] n water of river
강좌 [kangjwa] n chair
강철 [kangchol] n steel
강토 [kangto] n territory
강연 [kang-yon] n lecture
갈다 [katda] a same
같이 [kachi] ad as
거기 [kogi] pron that place
거기에 [kogie] pron dat there
거대하다 [kodaehada] a great
거리 [kori] n street
거절하다 [kojolhada] vt refuse
거주지 [kojuzi] n place of resid-
거주하다 [kojuhada] vt live hence
거의 [koui] ad almost
건강 [kon-gang] n health
건강하다 [kon-ganghada] a healthy
건너가는 곳 [konmoganeun-got] n crossing
건느다 [konmuda] vi, vt cross
건㎝길 [konnumgil] n crosswalk
건설 [konsol] n construction
건설하다 [konsolhada] vi be built
건설하다 [konsolhada] vt build
걸다 [kotda] vi walk
걸다 [kolda] vt hang
걸리다 [kollida] vi take, need
걸상 [kolsang] n chair
검다 [komda] a black
것 [kot] incomp n thing
겨우 [kyou] ad barely, hardly
겨울 [kyoul] n winter
견학 [kyonhak] n observation-
견해 [kyonhae] n view
결과 [kyolgwa] n result
결심하다 [kyolsimhada] vi, vt determine
결정적 [kyoljongjok] n decisive
결정하다 [kyoljonghada] vt decide
결코 [kyolko] ad never
결합 [kyolhap] n combination
결 [kyom] ad concurrently
결손하다 [kyomsonhada] a modest
경공업 [kyong-gong-op] n light industry
경기장 [kyong-gijang] n stadium
경제 [kyongje] n economy
경제적 [kyongjejok] n economic
경축하다 [kyongchukada] vt con-
gratulate
경치 [kyongchi] n scenery
경험 [kyonghom] n experience
경음악 [kyong-umak] n light music [respect
경애하다 [kyong-aehada] vi, vt
경애 [kyokda] vt experience
고기 [kogi] n meat
고귀하다 [kogwiha] n precious
고등치다 [kodongchida] vi pulsate
고르다 [koruda] vt assort
고맙다 [komapda] a thankful
고상하다 [kosanghada] a lofty
고전음악 [kojonumak] n classical music
고치다 [kochida] vt repair
고향 [kohyang] n native place
고요하다 [koyohada] a still
곧 [kot] ad immediately; namely
곧다 [kotda] a straight
곧바로 [kotbaro] ad straight
골 [kol] n valley
골동품 [koldongpum] n curio
골짜기 [koljijagi] n valley
골다 [kopda] a. beautiful
곳 [kot] n place
공 [kong] n ball
공기 [kong gi] n air
공개적 [kong gaejok] n open
공민 [kongmin] n citizen
공부 [kongbu] n study
공부하다 [kongbuhada] vt study
공산주의 [kongsanjuui] n communism
공산주의자 [kongsanjuuija] n communist
공산주의적 [kongsanjuijok] n communist
공식적 [kongsikjok] n official
공장 [kongjang] n factory
공학대 [kongjyang daehak] n university-level factory college
공학대학생 [kongjang daehaksae ng] n student at a university-level factory college
공포 [kongpo] n fear
공화국 [konghwaguk] n republic
공업 [kong op] n industry
공업국가 [kong opgukga] n industrial state
공업화 [kong opwa] n industrialization
공연 [kong yon] n performance
공연공정 [kong yonsunso] n program
공정 [kong won] n park
교과서 [kyogweso] n textbook
교사 [kyosi] n instruction, teaching
교실 [kyosil] n classroom
교장 [kyojoang] n principal
교소주의 [kyojojuui] n dogmatism
교통 [kyotong] n communication
교훈 [kyohun] n lesson
교환 [kyohwan] n exchange
교환수 [kyohwansu] n telephone operator
교환하다 [kyohwanhada] vt exchange
교양 [kyoyang] n education
교양자 [kyoyangja] n educator
교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt educate
교육 [kyoyuk] n education
교육하하다 [kyoyukada] vt educate
교육학 [kyoyukak] n pedagogy
교예 [kyo ye] n circus
교예극장 [kyo ye gukjang] n circus
교원 [kyowon] n teacher
구 [ku] num nine
구강과의사 [ku ggang gw auisa] n dentist
구경 [kugyong] n sightseeing
구경하다 [kugyonghada] vt see
구라파 [kurapa] n Europe
구라파움식 [kurapaumsik] n European food
구락부 [kurakbu] n club (house)
구름 [kurum] n cloud f guish
구별하다 [kubyolhada] vt distinguish
구십 [kusip] num ninety
구호 [kuho] n slogan
구월 [kuwo] n September
국 [kuk] n soup
국가 [kukga] n state, country
국기 [kukgi] n national flag
국방 [kukbang] n national defense
국수 [kuksu] n noodle f fence
국적 [kukjok] n nationality
국제적 [kukjejok] n international
국제주의 [kukjejuui] n international
국제주의적 [kukjejuuijok] n international
국제친선전람관 [kukje.chinson.jollamgwang] n International Friendship Exhibition
국제우편국 [kukje.upyon.guk] n International Post Office
군 [kun] n county
군국주의 [kun.gukjuui] n militarism f militarist
군국주의자 [kun.gukjuuija] n militarist
군관 [kun.gwan] n officer
군대 [kundae] n army
군사적 [kunsajok] n military
군중 [kunjung] n masses
군중대회 [kunjungdaehoe] n mass meeting
군병 [kunbbang] n soldier
군인 [kunin] n army man
군계 [kutge] a ad fo firmly
군다 [kutda] a hard, firm
굴 [kul] n oyster
굴다 [kulda] vi roll
굴복하다 [kulbokada] vi submit
굴하다 [kulhada] vi submit
군다 [kukda] a thick
군전 [kungjon] n palace
규율 [kyuyul] n discipline
규정 [kyujong] n rules
귤 [kyul] n orange
그 [ku] pron he; that
그것 [kugot] incomp n with pron it, that
그들 [kudul] pron they
그대 [kuda] pron you
그러나 [kuron] a but
그러니가 [kuronigga] a con fo therefore
그러네 [kuronede] a con fo but
그렇게 [kuroke] a ad fo so
그렇다 [kurota] a so f but
그렇지만 [kurochiman] a con fo
그리고 [kurogo] v con fo and
그림 [kurim] n picture f book
그림책 [kurimchaek] n picture
그림엽서 [kurimyopsor] n picture postcard
그저께 [kujogge] n the day before yesterday
그뿐 아니라 [kubbunanira] phrase besides
극장 [kukjang] n theatre
근로자 [kulloja] n working people
근본 [kunbon] n foundation
글 [kul] n letter f sentence
글자 [kulja] n letter
글씨 [kulssi] n handwriting
금 [kums] n gold
금속 산 [kumgangsan] n Mt. Kumgang
기계 [kigye] n machine press
기계화하다 [kigyeohwahada] vt mechanize
기관 [kigwan] n organ
기념 [kinyom] n commemoration
기념관 [kinyomgwan] n memorial house
기념비 [kinyombi] n monument
기념품 [kinyompum] n souvenir
기능 [kinung] n function
g다 [kida] vi crawl
g다리다 [kidarida] vt wait
g다리간 [kidarimkan] n waiting room
g록 [kire] n record
g름 [kirum] n oil
g발 [kibbal] n flag
g분 [lbin] n basis
g사 [kisa] n engineer, article
g술 [kisul] n technique
g기술자 [kisulja] n technician
g기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong] n technical revolution
g자 [kija] n journalist
g적 [kijok] n wonder
g지 [kiji] n base
g차 [kich] n train
g초 [kicho] n foundation, basis
g치 [kichi] n flag
기침 [kichim] n cough
기침하다 [kichimhada] vi cough
g후 [kihu] n climate
기꺼이 [kiggoi] ad with pleasure
기쁘다 [kibbuda] a joyful, glad
g쁨 [kibbum] n joy
기어이 [kioi] ad at any cost
기업소 [kispso] n enterprise
g원 [kiwon] n era
g양말 [kinyangmal] n stockings
g길 [kil] n road
g들 [kilda] a long
g리 [kiri] n length
g[mkim] n steam
김일성경기장 [Kim Il Sung gym
·gijang] n Kim Il Sung Stadium
g다 [kipda] a deep
g이 [kipi] n depth
g이 [kipi] ad deeply
g이 [kae] incomp n piece
g이 [kae] n dog
g다 [kaeda] vi clear up
g선문 [kaesonmun] n Arch of Triumph
g이다 [kaeda] vi clear up
g인 [kaein] n individual
g인용품 [kaeinyongpum] n personal effects
g급 [kyegup] n class
g단계 [kychan] n stairs
g단계 승강기 [kyedansik sung
·gang·gi] n escalator
g산대 [kyesanda] n counter
g산서 [kyesaenso] n account, bill
g산하다 [kyesanhada] vt count
g향 [kyesok] n continuation
g속하다 [kyesokda] vi continue
g승자 [kyesungja] n successor
g시다 [kyesida] vi there be.
계절 [kyejol] n season
계획 [kyehoek] n plan
계약 [kyeyak] n contract
고려 [koereoe] n puppet [army
고려군 [koereogun] n puppet
고려정권 [koereoejong·gwon] n puppet regime [gmnificent
국장하다 [koengjanghada] a ma-
귀 [kwi] n ear
귀국 [kwiguk] n repatriation
귀중품 [kwijungpum] n jewelry
귀중하다 [kwijunghada] a pre-
cious
귀엽다 [kwiyopda] a precious
과수원 [kwasuwon] n orchard
과자 [kwaja] n cake
과학 [kwhak] n science
과학자 [kwhahakja] n scientist
과학원 [kwhahagwon] n academy
of sciences
과업 [kwaop] n task
과일 [kwail] n fruit
과일즙 [kwailju] n fruit juice
과일청량음료 [kwail·chongryang·
umryo] n sherbet
관개 [kwan·gae] n irrigation
관계 [kwan·gye] n relation
관광객 [kwan·gwang·gaek] n
tourist
관광지 [kwan·gwangji] n tourist
resort
관광안내소 [kwan·gwang·annaeso] n
tourist information of-
office
관람자 [kwallamja] n spectator
관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] n
management board
관세 [kwanse] n customs
관찰하다 [kwanchalhada] vt
observe [about
관하여 [kwanhayo] v con fo
광고 [kwang·go] n announcement
광부 [kwangbu] n miner
광산 [kwangsan] n mine
광장 [kwangjang] n square
권 [kwon] n book
권리 [kwolli] n right
권위 [kwonwi] n authority

나 [na] pron I
나가는곳 [naganun·got] n exit
나가다 [nagada] vi go out, go
나누다 [nanuda] vt divide
나라 [nara] n country
나르다 [naruda] vt carry
나무 [namu] n tree
나타나다 [natanada] vi appear
나뭇 [napal] n trumpet
나쁘다 [nabbuda] a bad
나아가다 [naagada] vi advance
나이 [nai] n age
나곳 [nan·got] n birthplace
날 [nannal] n date of birth
날 [nal] n day
날다 [nalda] vi fly
날리다 [nallida] causat v let fly
날리다 [nallida] pass be flown
날자 [nalja] n date
날씨 [nalssi] n weather
남 [nam] n another person
남다 [namda] vi remain
남새 [namsae] n vegetables
남자 [namja] n man, male

남편 [nampyon] n husband, boy
남학생 [nambahkaeng] n school
남쪽 [nam(jjok)] n south
낮다1 [natda] vi recover
낮다2 [natda] a better
낮 [nat] n daytime; midday
낮다 [natda] a low
낮차 [natcha] n day train
너 [no] pron you
너희 [nohui] pron you
늘리 [nolli] ad widely
늘게 [nolge] a ad fo widely
넓다 [nopda] a wide, őver
념겨주다 [nomgyojuda] vt hand

남쳐수행하다 [nomchyoosuhaengha da] v with con fo overfull
남치다 [nomchida] vi overflow
남적다리 [nopjokdari] n thigh
녀가수 [nyogasu] n songstress
녀성 [nyosong] n woman
녀자 [nyoja] n woman, female
녀자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] n
toaster, stewardess

녀자음악가 [nyojaumakga] n wo-
man musician, girl

녀학생 [nyohaksaeng] n school

년 [nyon] n year
년간 [nyon.gan] n year
년간계획 [nyon.gan.gyehoek] n
annual plan

남원하다 [nyomwonhada] vt wish
노려다 [norata] a yellow
노래 [norae] n song
녹다 [nokda] vi melt
눈 [non] n rice-field
놀다 [nolda] vi play
놀음 [norum] n play
놀이감 [noriggam] n toy
농 [nom] n rogue
농막 [nongmak] n farmer’s hut
농막집 [nongmakjip] n farmer’s
hut

농민 [nongmin] n farmer
농사 [nongsal] n agriculture
농장 [nongjang] n farm
농촌 [nongchon] n village
농촌경제 [nongchon.gyongri] n
rural economy

높다 [nopda] a high
높이 [nopi] ad high
높이다 [nopida] vt elevate, heigh-

높다 [nota] vt put, lay
누구 [nugu] pron who
누나 [nuna] n sister
누르다 [nuruda] a yellow
누리다 [nurida] vt enjoy
누이 [nui] n sister
녹다 [nukda] a cheap
눈1 [nun] n eye
눈2 [nun] n snow
눈물 [nunmul] n tear
눈보라 [nunbora] n snowstorm
눈부시다 [nunbusida] a dazzling
눈썹 [nunso] n eyebrow
눈다 [nupda] vi lie
눈하다 [nupida] causat vt lay
눈대 [nyuda] n bond
| 다 [ta] | ad | all |
| 다그치다 [taguchida] | vt | hasten |
| 다르다 [taruda] | a | different |
| 다리1 [tari] | n | leg |
| 다리2 [tari] | n | bridge |
| 다리다 [tarida] | vt | iron |
| 다만 [taman] | adj | only |
| 다섯 [tasot] | num | five |
| 다섯 번째 [tasot(bon)jjae] | num | fifth |
| 다시 [tasi] | ad | again |
| 다시다 [tajida] | vt | harden; strengthen; confirm |
| 다음 [taum] | n | next |
| 단 [tan] | pre-n | only |
| 단결 [tan-gyol] | n | solidarity |
| 단계 [tan-gye] | n | stage |
| 단련 [tallyon] | n | training |
| 단어 [tano] | n | word |
| 달다 [talda] | vt | shut |
| 달1 [tal] | n | moon |
| 달2 [tal] | n | month |
| 달라 [talda] | a | sweet |
| 달력 [tallyok] | n | calendar |
| 달리 [talli] | ad | differently |
| 달리기 [talligi] | n | runner |
| 달리기선수 [talligonsu] | n | runner |
| 달라다 [talla] | vi | run |
| 달성하다 [talsonghada] | vi | achieve, attain |
| 달 [tak] | n | hen |
| 달고기 [takgogi] | n | chicken |
| 달걀 [talgal] | n | egg |
| 달배 [tamba] | n | cigarette |
| 달화 [tambahwa] | n | talk |
| 달례 [tamrye] | n | return salute |
| 달례방문 [tamryebangmun] | n | return visit |
| 달전 [tapjon] | n | reply telegram |
| 당 [tang] | n | party |
| 당1 [tang] | n | progress |
| 당대회 [tangdaehoe] | n | party congress |
| 당신 [tangsin] | n | you |
| 당적 [tangjok] | n | party |
| 당정책 [tangjongchaek] | n | party policy |
| 당하다 [tanghada] | vt | suffer |
| 당원 [tang-won] | n | party member |
달다 [tata] vi reach
뒤다 [takda] vt wipe
더 [to] ad more
더럽다 [toropda] a dirty
더럽히다 [toropida] vt soil
더욱 [touk] ad more
덜 [tol] ad less
둘다 [topda] vt cover
도 [to] n province
도덕 [todok] n morals, morality
도덕적 [todokiok] n moral
도대체 [todeache] ad on earth
도마도 [tomado] n tomato
도무지 [tomuji] ad quite
도서관 [tosogwan] n library
도시 [tosi] n city
도착 [tchak] n arrival
도착하다 [tchakada] vi arrive
도끼 [toggi] n ax
독 [tok] n earthenware jar
독립 [tongrip] n independence
독재 [tokjae] n dictatorship
독창 [tokchang] n solo
돈 [ton] n money exchange
돈바꾸기 [tonbagugi] n money exchange
don 받는곳 [tonban nin got] n cash-desk
돌다 [tolda] vi turn back
돌려주다 [tollyojuda] vt give
돌진하다 [toljinhadada] vi rush
돌아가다 [toragada] vi, vt go back
돌아오다 [toraoda] vi, vt come back
돌 [tol] n anniversary
돕다 [topda] vt help
동무 [tongmu] n comrade
동물 [tongmul] n animal
동물원 [tongmurwon] n zoo
동맹 [tongmaeng] n alliance
동상 [tongsang] n statue
동시 [tongsi] n same time
동지 [tongji] n comrade
동르다 [tong tuda] phrase dawn
d (쪽) [tong(ijok)] n east
d (안) [tong an] n time
d (요) [tongyo] n vacillation
d (대) [totdae] n mast
d 두 [tu] num two
d 두려워하다 [turyowohada] vt fear
d 두 번째 [tubonjjae] num second
d 두 [tul] num two
d 두 번째 [tulji] n second
d 두 [tung] n back
d 등 [tung] n back
d 등기편지 [tung gipyonji] n registered letter
d 등대 [tungdae] n lighthouse
d 등록장 [tungrokiang] n hotel register
d 대 [tae] n generation
대 2 [tae] ncomp n piece
대 3 [tae] prefix large, big
대극장 [taegukjang] n Grand Theatre
대낮 [taenat] n broad daylight
대다 [taeda] vt make an call
대단히 [taedani] ad very
대담하다 [taedamhada] a bold
대답 [taedap] n answer
대답하다 [taedapa] vi answer
대동강 [taedong-gang] n Tae-dong River
대동문 [taedongmun] n Taedong Gate
대대적 [taedaejok] n large-scale
대략 [taeryak] n about, approximately
대로 [taero] incomp n “as”
대리인 [taeriiin] n deputy
대문 [taemun] n front gate
대사 [taesa] n ambassador
대사관 [taesagwan] n embassy
대성산혁명렬사릉 [taesongsan hyongmyongryolsanung] n Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs’ Cemetery
대자연 [taejayon] n great nature
대접하다 [taejopada] vt entertain, serve
대주다 [taejuda] vt show
대중 [taejung] n masses
대통령 [taetongryong] n president
대포 [taepo] n gun
대표 [taepeyo] n delegate
대표단 [taepeyodan] n delegation
대표단단장 [taepeyodanjang] n head of a delegation
대풍 [taepung] n rich harvest
d대하다 [taehada] vt confront
d대하여 [taehayo] v con fo for
대학 [taehak] n university, college
대학생 [taehaksaaeng] n student
대외무역 [taeoeumuyok] n foreign trade
대외적 [taeoejok] n foreign
d대의원 [taeuiwon] n deputy
d대원 [taewon] n member of troops
d대 [te] incomp n place; case
d으나 [toeda] a hard
되다2 [toeda] vi become
d뒤 [twi] n back
뒤뿔어지다 [twiddorojida] vi drop behind
d뒤에 [twie] n dat behind
d돼지 [twaeji] n pig
돼지고기 [twaejigogi] n pork
러건검열 [ryoggwon-gomyol] n inspection of passports
러건번호 [ryoggwonbonho] n passport number
러행 [ryohaeng] n travel
러행목적 [ryohaengmokjok] n purpose of the journey
러행목적지 [ryohaengmokjokji] n destination of the journey
러행사 [ryohaengsa] n travel bureau
력사 [ryoksa] n history
련결 [ryon.gyol] n connection
련대 [ryondae] n regiment
련대성 [ryondaessong] n solidarity
련합 [ryonhap] n alliance
련이어 [ryonio] ad continuously
렬차 [ryolcha] n train
렬차식당 [ryolchaisikdang] n dining car
령도 [ryongdo] n leadership
령도하다 [ryongdohada] vt lead
령사 [ryongsa] n consul [late
령사관 [ryongsagwan] n consul
령수증 [ryongsujung] n receipt
령토 [ryongto] n territory
령역 [ryongyok] n sphere
로동 [rodong] n labour
로동계급 [rodong- gyegup] n working class
로동당 [rodongdang] n Workers’ Party
로동자 [rodongja] n worker
로동안전 [rodong-anjon] n labour safety
로력 [roryok] n labour
로력영웅 [roryok-yongung] n labour hero
론설 [ronsol] n article
론쟁 [ronjaeng] n debate
론쟁하다 [ronjaenghada] vt debate
료리 [ryori] n dish, food
루블 [rubul] n ruble
류월 [ryuwol] n June
륙 [ryuk] num six
륙십 [ryuksip] num sixty
륙성 [ryungsong] n prosperity
리론 [riron] n theory
리륙 [riryuk] n take-off
리발사 [ribalsa] n barber
리발소 [ribalso] n barber’s shop
리발하다 [ribalhada] vi have one’s hair cut
리사회 [risahoe] n board of directors
리해 [rihae] n understanding
리해하다 [rihaehada] vt understand
리용하다 [riyonghada] vt use
리익 [riik] n interests
립장 [ripjang] n stand-point
래달 [raedal] n next month
래일 [raeil] n tomorrow
레몬수 [remonsu] n lemonade
마당 [madang] n yard, garden; place
마다 [madi] n joint; word
마라손 [marason] n marathon
마라손선수 [marasonansom] n marathon runner
마르다 [maruda] vi dry
마시다 [masida] vt drink
마치1 [machi] n hammer
마치2 [machi] ad just as
마흔 [mahun] num forty
마을 [maul] n village
마음 [maum] n heart
막다 [makda] vt stop
만 [man] num ten thousands
만경대 [mangyongdae] n Mangyongdae
만경봉 [mangyongbong] n Mangyong Hill
만나다 [mannada] vt meet
만년필 [mannyonpil] n fountain-pen
만들다 [mandulda] vt make, manufacture
만수대예술극장 [mansudaeyesulgukjang] n Mansudae Art Theatre
만수무강 [mansumugang] n long life and good health
만세 [manse] int hurrah
만족하다 [manjokada] a be satisfied
만행 [manhaeng] n barbarity
만약 [manyak] n if
만일 [manil] n if
많다 [manta] a many, much
많이 [mani] ad much
말누이 [mamni] n eldest sister
말1 [mal] n horse
말2 [mal] n word, language
말다1 [maldaya] vt roll
말다2 [malda] verb which is used as an auxiliary “not”
말하다 [malhada] vi, vt say, speak, tell
말하자면 [malhajamyon] v con fo so to speak
말씀 [maillsum] n word (in the meaning of respect)
말씀하다 [maillsumhada] vt say (in the meaning of respect)
맞다 [makda] a clear
맞아지다 [malgaidda] v with con fo clear up
맞 [mat] n taste
맞보다 [matboda] v with n taste
맞다1 [matada] vi fit
맞다2 [matda] vt be struck, be exposed
맞추다 [matchuda] vt make fit
맞이하다 [majihada] vt receive
맞켜지다 [matgyojida] pass be entrusted
말기다 [matgida] causat v entrust
머리 [mori] n head
머리말 [morimal] n foreword
머리수건 [morisugon] n kerchief
머리칼 [morikal] n hair
머리아픔 [moriapum] n headache
먹다 [mokda] vt eat
먹이다 [mogida] causat v let eat
먼저 [monjo] ad first
멀다 [molda] a far
멀리 [molli] ad far away
먹다 [motda] vi stop f days
여섯 [myochil] n how many
연도 [myondo] n shaving
연도칼 [myondokal] n razor
명 [myong] incomp n person
명년 [myongnyon] n next year
명령 [myongryong] n order
명승지 [myongsungji] n famous spots
명절 [myongjol] n festival day
명예칭호 [myongyechingho] n honorary title
몇 [myot] pron how many
모두 [modu] ad all
모든 [modun] pre-n all
모르다 [moruda] vt do not know
모래 [morae] n sand
모레 [more] n the day after tomorrow
모범 [mobom] n model
모자 [moja] n hat, cap
모자라다 [majarada] vi be short
모이다 [moida] pass come together
모임 [moin] n meeting
목 [mok] n neck
목란꽃 [mongran-ggot] n magnolia
목적 [mokjok] n purpose, aim
목적지 [mokjokjiji] n destination
목표 [mokpyo] n goal, target
목요일 [mogyoil] n Thursday
목욕 [mogyok] n bathing
목욕실 [mogyoksil] n bathroom
목욕칸 [mogyokkan] n bathroom
목욕탕 [mogyoktang] n bath
목욕하다 [mogyokada] vi bathe
물아내다 [moranaeda] vt drive
몸 [mom] n body l out
몸소 [momso] ad personally
몸시 [mopsi] ad very
못 [mot] ad not
못내 [monnae] ad very
못하다1 [motada] a not
못하다2 [motada] vt cannot
무기 [mugi] n weapon
무겁다 [mugopda] a heavy
무게 [muge] n weight
무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] n trolley bus
무덤다 [mudopda] a sultry
무대 [mudae] n stage
무릎 [murup] n knee
무슨 [musun] pron what
무장 [mujang] n armaments
무장시키다 [mujang sikida] causat v make arm
무장하다 [mujanghada] vi, vt arm
무조건 [mujogon] n unconditionally
무지개 [mujigae] n rainbow
무엇 [muot] pron what
무역 [muyok] n trade
무역협정 [muyokhyopjong] n trade agreement
무용가 [muyong-ga] n dancer
문 [mun] n door, gate
문법 [munbop] n grammar
문제 [munje] n question, problem
문학 [munhak] n literature
문화 [munhwal] n culture
문화공전 [munhwagung-jon] n cultural palace
문화혁명 [munhwahyongmyong] n cultural revolution
문화회관 [munhwahoeogwan] n cultural clubhouse
물다 [mulda] vi, vt ask
물 [mul] n water
물건 [mulgon] n goods
물건사기 [mulgongsagi] n purchases
물결 [mulgyol] n wave
물고기료리 [mulgogiryori] n fish foods
물다 [mulda] vt pay
물론 [mullon] ad of course
물품 [mulpum] n goods
물어보기 [murobogi] n inquiring
물음간 [murumkan] n information office
물치다 [mungchida] vi unite
목다 [mukda] vt bind
미리 [miri] ad beforehand
미래 [mirae] n future
미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan] n picture gallery
미제 [mije] n US imperialism;

미제국주의자 [mijegeokjuuija] n US imperialist
미안하다 [mianhada] a sorry
민족 [minjok] n nation
민족무용 [minjongmuyong] n folk dance
민족별 [minjokbyol] n national-
민족적 [minjokjok] n national
민족주의 [minjokjuui] n nationalism
민족주의적 [minjokjuuijok] n nationalistic
민주주의 [minjjuui] n democracy
민주주의적 [minjjuuijok] n democratic
민요 [minyo] n folk song
믿음을잡다 [midumjikada] a reliable
밀 [mil] n wheat
밀가루 [milgaru] n wheat flour
밀영 [miryong] n secret camp
및 [mit] ad and
매 [mae] pre-n every
매국노 [maegungno] n traitor
(to one’s country)
매우 [maeu] ad very
매일 [maeil] n every day
맥박 [maebak] n pulse
맥주 [maekju] n beer
맞다 [maetda] vt conclude

바나나 [panana] n banana
바다 [pada] n sea
바닥 [padak] n floor
바람 [param] n wind
바로 [paro] ad straight
바래다 [paraeda] vt see (a person) off
바레무용 [paremuyong] n ballet
바지 [paji] n trousers
바치다 [pachida] vt devote
바퀴 [pakwi] n wheel
바꾸다 [pagguda] vt exchange
바쁘게 [pabbuge] a ad fo busily
바쁘다 [pabbuda] a busy
바쁘 [pabbi] ad busily
박다 [pakda] vt strike in
박물관 [pangmulgwan] n museum
박수 [paksu] n hand clapping
박히다 [pakida] pass be struck in
반가이 [pan-gai] ad joyfully, glad
반갑다 [pan-gapda] a joyful, glad
반도 [pando] n peninsula
반드시 [pandusi] ad certainly, surely
반대하다 [pandaehada] vt oppose
반면 [panmyon] n contrary
반미 [panmi] n anti-US (imperialist)
반복하다 [panbokada] vt repeat
반숙한 둡볼 [pansukan dalgal] n with att fo soft boiled egg
반주하다 [panjuhada] vt play a person's accompaniment
반제 [panje] n anti-imperialism; anti-imperialist
반제련대성 [panjeryondaessong] n anti-imperialist solidarity
반제적 [panjejok] n anti-imperialististle
반창고 [panchang-go] n adhesive
받는 사람 [pannun saram] n with att fo receiver, addressee
받다 [patda] vt receive kept
받아들이다 [padadurida] vt acc.
발 [pal] n foot
발가락 [palgarak] n toe
발랄하다 [pallahada] a lively
발바닥 [palbadak] n sole
발송 [palsong] n sending
발신인 [palsinim] n sender
발전 [paljon] n development
발전되다 [paljondoeda] vi be developed
발전시키다 [paljonsikida] causat v develop
밝다 [papda] a bright, dawn, break
밝다 [papda] vt step on
밤1 [pam] n night
밤2 [pam] n chestnut
밤차 [pamchaa] n night train
밥 [pap] n boiled rice
방 [pang] n room
방문 [panmun] n visit
방문하다 [pangmunhada] vt visit
방법 [pangbop] n method
방송 [pangsong] n broadcasting
방송하다 [pangsonghada] vt bro-
방조 [pangjo] n help, adcast
방침 [pangchim] n line
방향 [panghyang] n direction
발 [pat] n field
발머리 [panmori] n edge of fi-
발므로 [pagguro] n inst to out-
변 [pon] incomp n time
변개 [pon-gae] n lightning
변호 [ponho] n number
변색거리다 [ponjokgorida] vi, vt gitter
변역 [ponyok] n translation
변역하다 [ponyokada] vt trans
번역원 [ponyogwon] n translator
번영 [ponyong] n prosperity
번영하다 [ponyonghada] vi prosper
별 [pol] n bee (of clothes)
별 [pol] incomp n a suit (of clothes)
별씨 [polsso] ad already
범 [pom] n tiger
법 [pop] n law
법령 [pomryong] n law
벗 [potda] vt take off
벼 [pyo] n rice plant; unhulled
벽 [pyok] n wall (of rice)
벽소 [pyonso] n toilet
변하다 [pyonhada] vi, vt change
별 [pyol] n star
병 [pyong] n bottle
병 [pyong] n illness
병사 [pyongsa] n soldier
병원 [pyongwon] n hospital
보고하다 [pogohada] vt report
보고자리 [pogumjari] n nest
보내는 사람 [ponaenun saram] n with for sender
보내다 [ponaeda] vt send
보다 [podaa] vt see
보증 [pojang] n guarantee
보통강려관 [potong ganyeogwan] n Potonggang Hotel
보험 [pohom] n insurance
보여주다 [poyojuda] v with con for show
보이다1 [poida] pass be seen
보이다2 [poida] causat v let see
복도 [pokdo] n corridor
복무하다 [pongmuhada] vi serve
복숭아 [poksung a] n peach
복잡하다 [pokjapada] a complicated
봄 [pom] n spring (of)
봄날 [pomnal] n spring day
봄바람 [pombaram] n spring breeze
부부 [puduropda] a soft
부디 [pudi] ad surely
부르다 [puruda] vt call; sing
부모 [pumono] n parents
부인 [pumun] n branch
부부 [pubu] n husband and wife
부부 [pubun] n part
부인 [pujang] n minister
부지런하다 [pujironhada] a diligent
부지런히 [pujironi] ad diligently
부지다 [puchida] vt send
부탁하다 [putakada] vt request
부터 [puto] aux end from
부엌 [puok] n kitchen
부엌문 [puongmun] n door of kitchen
부엌열 [puongnil] n kitchen
북 [puk] n north
분 [pun] n minute
분사 [pun] incomp n person
분계선 [pun gyeson] n demarcation line
분대 [pundae] n squad
분수 [punsu] n fountain
불 [pul] n fire
불다 [pulđa] vi blow
불타다 [pultad'a] vi burn
불편하다 [pulpyonhada] a inconvenient
불다 [pukda] a red
붉은기 [pulgun-gi] n red flag
붕대 [pungddae] n bandage
붕붕 [pungbungen] ad buzz
비 [pi] n rain
비겁한자 [pigopanja] n coward
비닐론 [pinallon] n vinalon
비누 [pinu] n soap
비다 [pida] a vacant, empty
비단 [pidan] n silk
비로소 [piroso] ad for the first time
비록 [pirok] ad even if
비료 [pirojo] n fertilizer
비서 [piso] n secretary
비치다 [pichida] vi shine
비행기 [pihaeng-gi] n aeroplane
비행기시간표 [pihaeng-gisiganpyo] n time table
비행기표 [pihaeng-gipyo] n airline ticket
비행사 [pihaengsa] n airman
비행장 [pihaengjang] n airport
비행장관세 [pihaengjang-gwanse] n airport tax
비싸다 [pisada] a expensive
비어있음 [piyoissum] n vacant
비옷 [piot] n raincoat
빗 [pit] n comb
빗다 [pitda] vt comb
빙상관 [pingsang-gwan] n Ice Rink
빗 [pit] n debt
빗 [pit] n light
빛나다 [pinnada] vi shine
배 1 [pae] n belly
배 2 [pae] n ship
배 3 [pae] n pear
배 4 [pae] n times
배구 [paegu] n volleyball
배다 [paeda] a thick
배려 [paeryo] n solicitude, care
배우 [paeu] n actor
배우기 [paegi] n learning
배우다 [paedya] vt learn
백 [pek] num hundred [du
백두산 [paekdusan] n Mt. Paek-
백만 [paemman] num million
백화점 [paekwajom] n depart-

ment store
베개 [pegae] n pillow
베다 [peda] vt cut
뵈다 [poeda] vt see (in the meaning of respect)

사 [sa] num four
사귀다 [sagwida] vi, vt make friends with
사과 [sagwa] n apple
사다 [sada] vt buy
사라지다 [sarajida] vi disappear
사람 [saram] n man
사랑 [sarang] n love
사랑하다 [saranghada] vt love
사명 [samyong] n mission

389
사무원 [samuwon] n office worker
사상 [sasang] n idea
사상적 [sasangjok] n ideological
사상혁명 [sasanghyongyang] n ideological revolution
사실 [sasil] n fact
사십 [sasip] num forty
사적지 [sajokji] n historical places
사전 [sajon] n dictionary
사절 [sajol] n delegate
사증 [sajjung] n visa
사증번호 [sajjungbonho] n visa number
사진 [sajin] n photo
사진기 [sajin·gi] n camera
사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi] n photographing
사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumjang] n camera shop
사탕 [satang] n sugar
사탕가루 [satang·garu] n soft sugar
사회 [sahoe] n society
사회적 [sahoejok] n social
 사회주의 [sahoejuui] n socialism
사회주의적 [sahoejuuijok] n socialist
사용하다 [sayonygahada] vt use
사이다 [said] n fizzy drink
사월 [sawol] n April
산 [san] n mountain
산보하다 [sanbohada] vi take a walk
산부인과의사 [sanbuin·gwauisa] n gynaecologist
산원 [sanwon] n maternity hospital
살 [sal] n flesh
살 [sal] n age
살가죽 [salgaek] n skin
살다 [sal] vi live
살림집 [sallimjip] n dwelling
살다 [samda] vt boil
삶은 닭알 [salmun dalgal] n with att fo boiled egg
삼 [sam] num three
삼가 [samga] ad respectfully
삼십 [samsip] num thirty
삼월 [samwol] n March
삼 [sap] n spade, shovel
상 [sang] n prize aably
상당히 [sangdang] ad consider-
상봉 [sangbong] n meeting
상상 [sangsang] n imagination
상상하다 [sangsanghada] vt im-
agine
상두건 [sangdugon] n napkin
상점 [sangjom] n shop
상업 [sang·op] n commerce
상경하다 [sang·yonhada] vt give
a performance
상병주 [syampangju] n champag-
gne
서기 [sogi] n secretary
서늘하다 [sonulhada] a cool
서다 [soda] vi stand
서로 [soro] ad each other
서른 [sorun] num thirty
서명하다 [somyonghada] vi sign
one's name
서해갑문 [sohaegammun] n West
Sea Barrage
서 (쪽) [soc(jjok)] n west
석란 [soktan] n coal
선거 [son-go] n election
선거권 [son-goggwon] n voting rights
선거하다 [son-gohada] vt elect
선물 [sonmul] n present
선물상점 [sonmuljangjom] n souvenir shop
선생 [sonsaeng] n teacher
선장 [sonjang] n captain
선택 [sontaek] n selection
설날 [sollal] n New Year’s Day
설사 [solsa] n diarrhoea
섬유 [somyu] n fibre
selectedIndex [sot] imp fo stop!
성 [song] n sex
성 [song] n family name
성격 [song-gyok] n character
성공하다 [song-gonghada] vt succeed
성과 [song-gwa] n success
성남 [songnyang] n match
성명 [songmyong] n statement
성별 [songbyol] n sex distinction
성스럽다 [songsuropda] a sacred
성원 [songwon] n member
소 [so] n cow, bull
소고기 [sogogi] n beef
소금 [sogum] n salt
소개 [sogae] n introduction
소개하다 [sogaehada] vt introduce
소나무 [sonamu] n pine
소녀 [sonyo] n girl
소년 [sonyon] n boy
소년단원 [sonyondanwon] n Child-
dren’s Union member
소리 [sori] n sound
소리치다 [sorichida] v with n cry
소멸하다 [somyolhada] vt wipe out
소설가 [sosolga] n novelist
소식 [sosik] n news
소젖 [sojot] n milk
소포 [sopo] n parcel
소환장 [sohwajang] n letter of recall
소아과의사 [soaggwauisa] n child specialist, paediatrician
속 [sok] n inside
속내의 [songnaeui] n underwear
속도 [sokdo] n speed
손 [son] n hand
손가락 [son-garak] n finger
손님 [sonnim] n guest
손바닥 [sonbadak] n palm (of the hand)
손수건 [sosugon] n handkerchief
손점 [sonjim] n hand baggage
손잡대를 꺼는곳 [sonjimmatgunungot] n cloakroom
손톱 [sontop] n fingernail
수 [su] n number
수고하다 [sugohada] vi take trouble, do a service
수단 [sudan] n means
수도1 [sudo] n water-works
수도2 [sudo] n capital
수량 [suryang] n quantity
수령 [suryong] n leader
수리하다 [surihada] vt repair
수속하다 [susokada] vt go through the formalities
수송 [susong] n transport
수자 [suija] n figure
수정주의 [sujongjiuui] n revision
수족관 [sujokgwan] n aquarium
수준 [sujun] n level
수출 [suchul] n export
수출품 [suchulpum] n export goods
수출하다 [suchulhada] vt export
수표 [supyo] n signature
수표하다 [supyohada] vi sign
수행하다 [suhaenghada] vt carry out
수업 [suop] n lessons
수요일 [suyoil] n Wednesday
수입 [suip] n import
수입하다 [suipada] vt import
숙영지 [sugyongji] n billeting area
순간 [sun·gan] n moment
순대 [sundaee] n sausage
술 가락 [sutgarak] n spoon
술 [sul] n wine
스물 [sumul] num twenty
스로 [susuro] ad for oneself
슬기쁨다 [sulgireopda] a wise
슬프다 [sulpuda] a sad
승강기 [sung·gang·gi] n elevator, lift
승냥이 [sungnyang·i] n wolf
승리 [sungri] n victory
승용차 [sung·yongcha] n passenger car
시 [si] n o’clock
시간 [sigan] n time
시간차이 [siganchae] n difference in time
시간표 [siganpyo] n timetable
시계 [sigye] n watch
시계상점 [sigyesangjom] n watch shop
시내 [sinae] n city centre
시내구경 [sinaegugyong] n city sightseeing
시내관광버스 [sinaegwan·gwang bbossu] n city sightseeing bus
시내버스 [sinaebbosu] n city bus
시다 [sida] a sour
시대 [sidae] n era
시련 [siryon] n trial
시작 [sijak] n beginning
시작하다 [sijakada] vt begin
시장 [sijang] n market
시합 [sihap] n match
시험 [sihom] n examination
시인 [siin] n poet
시외버스 [sioebbosu] n long-distance bus
시월 [siwol] n October
식당 [sikdang] n dining room; restaurant
식료품 [singnyopum] n foodstuff
식료품상점 [singnyopumsangjom] n grocer’s shop, grocery
식물 [singmul] n plant
식물원 [singmulwon] n botanical garden
식사 [siksa] n meal
식사하다 [siksahada] vi have a meal
식사 안내표 [siksaannaeppyo] n menu
식초 [sikcho] n vinegar
식후가과 [sikudagwa] n dessert
식욕 [sigyok] n appetite
신 [sin] n shoes
신경과의사 [sin'gyong gwauisa] n neurologist
신고하다 [sin'gohada] vt declare
신다 [sinda] vt put on
신문 [simnun] n newspaper
신발 [sinbal] n shoes
신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] n shoe store
신청하다 [sinchonghada] vt request
신임장 [sinimjang] n credentials
실로 [sillo] ad really
실제적으로 [siljejoguro] n inst really
실현하다 [silhyonhada] vt realize
심각하다 [simgakada] a serious
심장 [simjang] n heart
심 [sip] num ten
심자로 [sipjaro] n crossroad
십이월 [sibiwol] n December
십일 [sibil] num eleven
십일월 [sibirwol] n November
쉽다 [sipda] verb which is used as an auxiliary want
새¹ [sae] n bird
새² [sae] pre-n new
새롭다 [saeropda] a new
새해 [saehae] n new year
색 [saek] n colour
색깔 [saekgal] n colour
생각하다 [saeng-gakada] vi, vt think
생과자 [saeng-gwaja] n cake
생닭벌 [saengdalgal] n fresh egg
생명 [saengmyong] n life
생산 [saengsan] n production
생산하다 [saengsanhada] vi, vt produce
생선국 [saengson-guk] n fish soup
생재 [saengchae] n salad
생활 [saenghwal] n life
생일 [saeng-il] n birthday
세 [se] num three
세금 [segum] n tax
세계 [segye] n world
세계적 [segyejok] n world-wide
세관 [segwan] n customs
세다¹ [sedæ] a strong
세다² [sedæ] vt count
세대 [sedae] n generation
세번째 [sebonjjae] num third
세상 [sesang] n world
세탁소 [setakso] n laundry
세우다 [seuda] causat v make stand, set up
셋 [set] num three
셋째 [setjjae] num third
쇠 [soe] n iron
쇠다 [soeda] vt celebrate
쉬는날 [swinun nal] n with att fo holiday, off day
쉬다 [swida] vi, vt rest from one's work
쉰 [swin] num fifty
쉽다 [swipda] a easy
차 [cha] int well
자기 [chagi] pron self, oneself
자네 [chane] pron you
자다 [chada] vi sleep
자동차 [chadongcha] n car
자동차운전수 [chadongchaunjonseu] n driver
자동차화 [chadonghwah] n automation
자라다 [charada] vi grow
자랑하다 [charanghada] vi, vt be proud of
자료 [charyo] n materials
자르다 [charuda] vt cut
자리 [chari] n place
자리번호 [charibonho] n seat number
자리표 [charipyo] n boarding card
자립 [charip] n self-sustenance
자본가 [chabon-ga] n capitalist
자본주의 [chabonjuui] n capitalism
자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] n capitalist
자신 [chasin] n self, oneself
자전거 [chajon-go] n bicycle
자주 [chaju] n independence
자주 [chaju] ad often, frequently
자주성 [chajussong] n Chajusong
자주적 [chajujok] n independent
자재 [chaje] n material
자연 [chayon] n nature
자욱하다 [chaukada] a thick
자위 [chawi] n self-defence
작가 [chakga] n writer
작곡가 [chakgokga] n composer
작다 [chakda] a small, little
작전 [chakjon] n (military) operations
작업 [chagop] n work
작업반 [chagopban] n work-team
잔 [chan] n cup, glass
잔돈 [chandon] n small change
잘 [chal] ad well; skillfully
잠 [cham] n sleep
잠간 [chamgan] n short time; for a while
잠들다 [chamdulda] vi fall asleep
잠시 [chamsi] n for a while
잠자다 [chamjada] vi sleep
잡다 [chapda] vi catch
잡수시다 [chapsusida] vt eat
(in the meaning of respect)
잡지 [chapji] n magazine
잣나무 [channamu] n pine-nut
장 [chang] n sheet of paper, tree
장갑 [chang-gap] n gloves
장기 [chang-gi] n chess
장령 [changryong] n general
장마 [changma] n long (spell of) rain
장미 [changmi] n rose
장미 (꽃) [changmi(ggot)] n flower
장비 [changbi] n equipment
장난지 [changdanji] n calf
저 [cho] pron that
저 [cho] pron 1
저가락 [choggarak] n chopsticks
저기 [chogi] pron that place
저기에 [chogie] pron dat there
저녁 [chonyok] n evening
저녁밥 [chonyokbap] n supper
저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] n supper
저녁에 [chonyoge] n dat in the evening
저절로 [chojollo] ad of itself, of oneself
저희 [chohui] pron we
적 [chok] n enemy
적극적 [chokgukjok] n active
적극적으로 [chokgukjoguro] n inst actively
적다 [chokda] a few, little, small
적용하다 [chogyonghada] vt apply
전1 [chon] n before
전2 [chon] n jion (unit of Korean coin)
전기 [chon-ge] n electricity
전기차 [chon-gecha] n electric train
전람관 [chollamgwan] n exhibition hall
전람회 [chollamhoe] n exhibition
전보 [chonbo] n telegram
전보용지 [chonboyongji] n telegram form
전부 [chonbu] n all
전사 [chonsa] n soldier
전선 [chonsong] n (battle) front
전진하다 [chonjinha-da] vi advance
전쟁 [chonjaeng] n war
전차 [choncha] n streetcar, tram car
전체 [chonche] n whole, all
전취물 [chonchimul] n gains
전통 [chontong] n tradition
전투 [chontu] n battle
전투적 [chontujok] n militant
전하다 [chonhada] vt inform
전화 [chonhwa] n telephone
전우 [chonu] n comrade-in-arms
전에 [chone] n dat before
젊다 [chomda] a young
점 [chom] n point
점수 [chomsu] n mark
점심 [chomsim] n lunch
점심밥 [chomsimbap] n lunch
점심시간 [chomsimsigan] n dinner hour
점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] n lunch
접견 [chopgyon] n interview, reception, waiter
접대원 [chopdaewon] n steward, hostess
접수 [chopsu] n front desk
접수하다 [chopsuhada] vt receive
접시 [chopsi] n plate, dish
정거장 [chong-gojang] n (railway) station, power
정권 [chong-gwon] n political
정류소 [chongryuso] n stop
정말 [chongmal] ad truly
정상적으로 [chongsangjoguro] n ad in a regular way
정식 [chongsik] n table d'hôte
정신 [chongsin] n spirit
정전 [chongjon] n ceasefire
정전협정 [chongjonhyopjong] n armistice agreement
정지 [chongji] n stop
정치 [chongchi] n politics
정책 [chongchaek] n policy
정책적 [chongchaekjok] n of policy
젖다 [chotda] vi be wet
젖먹이 [chonmogi] n suckling
조 [cho] n set, l child
조건 [choggon] n condition
조국 [choguk] n fatherland
조사하다 [chosahada] vi, vt investigate
조선 [choson] n Korea
조선로동당 [chosonrodongdang] n the Workers’ Party of Korea
조선로동당원 [chosonrodongdang won] n member of the Workers’ Party of Korea
조선말 [chosonmal] n Korean, the Korean language
조선민주주의인민공화국 [choson minjujuuimin gonghwaguk] n the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, the DPRK
조선반도 [chosonbando] n the Korean Peninsula 
조선태 [chosonsaram] n Korean
조선헌명 [chosonhyongmyong] n the Korean revolution
조선클링박물관 [chosonhyong myongbangmulgwan] n Korean Revolution Museum
조선어 [chosono] n Korean, the Korean language
조선음식 [chosonumsik] n Korean food
조선인민 [chosoninmin] n the Korean people
조선인민군 [chosoninmin gun] n the Korean People’s Army
조심하다 [chosimhada] vi, vt be careful
조직 [chojik] n organization
조직생활 [chojiksaenghwal] n organizational life
조직하다 [chojikada] vt organize
조영사전 [choyongsajon] n Korean-English dictionary
조용하다 [choyongghada] a quiet, silent, still
조용히 [choyong i] ad still
존경 [chon gyong] n respect
존재 [chonjae] n existence
졸업하다 [choropada] vt graduate
좀 [chom] ad a little
좀다 [chopda] a narrow
종합대학 [chonghap daehak] n university
종업원 [chong obwon] n employment
종이 [chong i] n paper
좋다 [chota] a good
주 [chu] n week
주권 [chugwon] n sovereignty
주년 [chunyon] n anniversary
주다 [chuda] vt give
주무시다 [chumusa da] vi sleep
(in the meaning of respect)
주문하다 [chumunhada] vt order
주민 [chumin] n inhabitants
주사 [chusa] n injection
주석 [chusok] n president
주소 [chuso] n address
주체 [chuche] n Juche 
주체사상 [chuchesa san] n Juche
주체사상탑 [chuchesa sa gun tap] n the Tower of Juche
주택 [chutaek] n dwelling (house)
주인 [chuin] n master
주인공 [chuin-gong] n hero, heroine
주일 [chuil] n weekday, week
주의 [chuiui] n attention
주의하다 [chuuihada] vi pay attention to
죽 [chuk] n gruel
죽다 [chukda] vi die
죽음 [chugum] n death
준비 [chunbi] n preparation
준비하다 [chunbihada] vi, vt prepare for industry
중공업 [chung-gong-op] n heavy industry
중심 [chungsim] n centre
중지하다 [chungjihada] vt stop
중학교 [chunghakgyo] n middle school
중앙 [chung-ang] n centre
중요하다 [chung.yohada] a important
줄길다 [chulgpda] a merry
줄기다 [chulpida] vt like
증기 [chung-gi] n steam
증명서 [chungmyongso] n certificate
증오하다 [chung.ohada] vt hate
지구 [chigu] n earth
지금 [chigum] n now
지급정보 [chigupjonbo] n urgent telegram
지난날 [chinannal] n past (days)
지난해 [chinanhae] n last year
지내다 [chinaeda] vi live
지다 [chida] vi lose
지당하다 [chidanghada] a right
지도1 [chido] n map
지도2 [chido] n leading
지도자 [chidoja] n leader
지대 [chidae] n zone
지배하다 [chibaehada] vt govern
지배인 [chibaein] n director, manager
지식 [chisik] n knowledge
지지하다 [chijihada] vt support
지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] n with att for boiled fish
지키다 [chikida] vt defend
지하철도 [chihacholdo] n underground (railway), subway
직장 [chikjang] n workplace, workshop
직업 [chigop] n occupation
진달래 [chindallae] n azalea
진리 [chilli] n truth
질 [chil] n quality
질서 [chilso] n order
짐 [chim] n baggage
짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun sam ram] n with att for porter
짐차 [chimcha] n truck
잡표 [chimpyo] n claim tag
집 [chip] n house
집다 [chipda] vt pick (up)
집단 [chipdan] n collective
집단체조 [chipdanchejo] n mass gymnastic display
집집승 [chipjimsung] n domestic animal
재다 [chaeda] vt measure
재료 [chaeryo] n material
재미 [chaemi] n interest
재산 [chaesan] n property
재 продол [chaetori] n ashtray
제1 [che] pron 1; my
제2 [che] prefix “order”
제국주의 [chegukjuui] n imperialism  제도 [chedo] n system
제국주의자 [chegukjuuija] n imperialist  제철 [chechol] n suitable time
제의하다 [cheuihada] vt propose  제의하다 [cheuihada] vt propose
쥐 [chwi] n rat

大 [ch]

차1 [cha] n car  전리미동상 [chollimadongsang] n Chollima Statue
차2 [cha] n tea  전만에 [chanmane] num dat you are welcome
차3 [cha] n. tea  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
차다 [chada] a cold  철 [chol] n iron  철길 [cholgil] n railroad, rail-
차례 [charye] n order  철도 [chot] n way  철천지원수 [cholchonjiwonssu] n
차장 [chajang] n conductor  철도 [chot] n railroad, rail-
차표 [chapyo] n ticket  철도 [chot] n railroad, rail-
차이 [chai] n difference  철도 [chot] n railroad, rail-
착륙 [changryuk] n landing  철도 [chot] n railroad, rail-
착취하다 [chakchwiha] vt ex-
찬성 [chansong] n approval  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
찬언하다 [chanyonhada] a brilli-
찬언행 [chanumisik] n entrée  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
참가하다 [chamgahada] vi take  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
part in  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
참관 [chamgwan] n visit  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
참관하다 [chamgwanhada] vt v-
참으로 [chamuro] ad really  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
참외 [chamohe] n melon  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
창광산려관 [chang gwangsanryo gwan] n Changgwangsan Ho-
창문 [changmun] n window [te]  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
창조하다 [changjohada] vi, vt  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
찾다 [chatda] vt seek [create  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
처방 [chobang] n prescription  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
처음 [choum] n first  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천1 [chon] n cloth  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천2 [chon] num thousand  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천리 [cholli] n one thousand ri  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천리마 [chollima] n Chollima  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly  천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
mote
축구 [chukgu] n football
축구선수 [chukgusonsu] n football player
축구팀 [chukgutim] n football team
축배 [chukbae] n toast
축전 [chukjon] n festival; congratulatory telegram
축하 [chuka] n congratulation
축하하다 [chukahada] vt congratulate
축원하다 [chugwonhada] vt wish
출구 [chulgu] n exit, gateway
출국 [chulguk] n departure, exit
출국수속 [chulguk-susok] n departure procedures
출발 [chulbal] n departure
출발하다 [chulbalhada] vi, vt leave, start
출생하다 [chulsanghada] vi be born
출판사 [chulpansa] n publishing house
춤 [chum] n dance
訴다 [chupda] a cold
충분하다 [chungbunhada] a enouglh
충성 [chungsong] n loyalty
충심으로 [chungsimuro] n inst from (the bottom of) one’s heart
충직하다 [chungjikada] a faithful
층 [chung] n floor
층층대 [chungchungdae] n stairs
치다 [chida] vt beat
치료 [choryo] n medical treatment
치료하다 [choryohada] vt treat
치르다 [chiruda] vt pay
치솔 [chisol] n toothbrush
치즈 [chiju] n cheese
치약 [chiyak] n toothpaste
친구 [chin·gu] n friend
친선 [chinson] n friendship
친척 [chinchok] n relative
친애하다 [chinaehada] vi love
칠 [chil] num seven
칠십 [chilsip] num seventy
칠월 [chirwol] n July
침대 [chimdae] n bed
침대차 [chimdaecha] n sleeping carriage
침대간 [chimdaekan] n compartment
침략 [chimryak] n aggression
침략자 [chimryakja] n aggressor
침실 [chimsil] n bedroom
재1 [chae] incomp n "house"
재2 [chae] incomp n "just as it is"
책 [chaek] n book
책방 [chaekbang] n bookshop
책상 [chaeksang] n desk
책임비행사 [chagimbihangsa] n captian
체결 [chegyol] n conclusion
체계 [chegye] n system
체력 [cheryu] n stay
체력예정기간 [cheryuyejong·gigan] n intended length of stay
체조 [chejo] n gymnastics
체험 [chehom] n experience
체육 [cheyuk] n physical culture, gymnastics
체육관 [cheyugwan] n gymna-
최우등생 [choeudungsaeng] n top student
취급하다 [chwigupada] vi, vt treat
취소하다 [chwisohada] vi, vt cancel

칼 [kal] n knife
커피 [kopi] n coffee
캘레 [kolle] n pair
코 [ko] n nose
코코아 [kokoa] n cocoa
콤뮤니케 [kommyunike] n com-

만 [k]

만주가다 [tagogada] v with con-
fo go (by vehicles)
라다 [tada] vi get on [row
라도하다 [tadohada] vi overwhelm
라산하다 [tasanhada] vi take into consideration

라자기 [tajagi] n typewriter
라오르다 [taoruda] vi burn up
락구 [takgu] n ping-pong; table-
tennis
락아소 [tagaso] n nursery
란부 [tanbu] n coal-miner
란산물 [tansanmul] n soda water

라생하다 [tansaenghada] vi be born

란종하다 [taljimyon] n absorbent cotton
랩 [tap] n tower
러지다 [tojida] vi burst
력 [tok] n jaw, chin
로론 [toron] n debate
로론자 [toronja] n debater
로론하다 [toronhada] vi, vt debate

만주하다 [chunguda] vi, vt munique
송 [kong] n bean
송 [kung] ad plump
크다 [kuda] a big, large
키로메터 [kirometo] n kilometre
لاء [kwang] ad bang

만주 [t]

토요일 [toyoil] n Saturday
토의하다 [touihada] vi discuss
뜸 [top] n saw
통 [tong] n barrel
통과사증 [tong·gwasajung] n transit visa
통출임 [tongjorim] n tinned goods
통지하다 [tongjihada] vi inform
통역 [tong·yok] n interpretation; interpreter
통역하다 [tong·yokada] vi, vt interpret
통역원 [tong·yogwon] n interpreter
통일 [tong·il] n unification
통일전선 [tong·iljonson] n united front
통일하다 [tong·ilhada] vi unify
투사 [tusa] n fighter
투쟁 [tujaeng] n struggle
트렁크 [turongku] n trunk
특별하다 [tukbyolhada] a special
특별히 [tukbyori] ad especially
특히 [tuki] ad especially
물리다 [tulida] vi be mistaken
래도 [taedo] n attitude
래양 [taeyang] n sun
래여나다 [taeyonada] vi be born

대우다 [taeuda] causat v take in
택시 [taeksi] n taxi
택시정류소 [taeksijongryuso] n taxi stand
레제 [teje] n thesis
텔레비전 [tellebijyon] n television

派 [pagoed] 1 n destruction
파괴하다 [pagoehada] vt destroy
파도 [pado] n wave
파마 [pama] n permanent wave
파시즘 [pasijum] n fascism
파운드 [paundu] n pound
판매원 [panmaewon] n seller
팔 [pal] n arm
팔 [pal] num eight
팔다 [palda] vt sell
팔다리 [paldari] n limb
팔십 [palsip] num eighty
팔꿈치 [palggumchi] n elbow
팔월 [parwol] n August
파자다 [pojida] vi spread (ent
편리하다 [pyollihada] a convenient
편지 [pyonji] n letter
평화 [pyonghwa] n peace [ful
평화롭다 [pyonghwaropda] a peaceful
평화적 [pyonghwajok] n peaceful
평화지대 [pyonghwajidae] n
peace zone
평양 [pyongyang] n Pyongyang
평양국제문화학관 [pyongyang-gukjumunhwahaeugwan] n Pyong-
yang International House of Culture

Ⅳ [p]

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] n Pyongyang
Grand Theatre
평양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] n Pyongyang Maternity Hospi-
tal
평양지하철도 [pyongyangjihachodo] n Pyongyang Metro
평양체육관 [pyongyangcheuyukgwan] n Pyongyang Indoor
Stadium
포도 [podo] n grapes
포도슬 [podosul] n grape wine
포크 [poku] n fork
포위 [pomi] n encirclement
폭격 [pokgyok] n bombing
폭력 [pongryok] n violence
표 [pyo] n ticket
표값 [pyogap] n fare
표판문 [pyopanun-got] n ticket
office
표현하다 [pyohyonhada] vi ex-
표르다 [puruda] a blue
물 [pul] n grass
冴 [pum] n breast, bosom
몸성 [pumsong] n character
부부하다 [pungbuhada] a rich
풍습 [pungsup] n custom
프로레타리아 [puroretaria] n proletarian
프라투름 [puraeturom] n platform
피 [pi] n blood
피곤하다 [pigonhada] a get tired
피다 [pida] vi bloom
피부 [pibu] n skin
피부과의사 [pibuggwauisa] n dermatologist
피아노 [piano] n piano
피압박민족 [piapbakminjok] n oppressed nation
필름 [pillim] n film
필요하다 [piryohada] a neces-
쇄 [pe] n lung
폐지 [peji] n page
펜 [pen] n pen

하나 [hana] num one
하늘 [hanul] n sky
하다 [hada] vt do ʃ ʃ ly
하마투연 [hamatumyon] ad near-
학교 [hakgyo] n school
학습 [haksup] n study ʃ house
학습당 [haksupdang] n study
학습장 [haksupjang] n notebook
학습하다 [haksupada] vt study
학생 [haksaeng] n pupil
학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyon-g
ungjon] n students and child-
ren's palace
한 [han] num one
한결같이 [han·gyolgachi] adv
unanimously
한계 [han·gye] n limit
한없이 [hanopsi] ad limitlessly
할머니 [halmoni] n grandmother
할아버지 [haraboji] n grand-
father
함께 [hamgge] ad together
합격하다 [hapgyokada] vi, vt
pass
합창 [hapchang] n chorus
항공 [hang·gong] n aviation
항공편 [hang·gongpyon] n by air
mail
항공편지 [hang·gongpyonji] n
air letter
항공우편 [hang·gong·upyon] n
aerial post, air mail
항구 [hang·gu] n harbour
항로번호 [hangrobonho] n flight
number
항상 [hangsang] ad always
항일 [hang·il] n anti-Japan(ese)
항일투사 [hang·iltusa] n anti-
Japanese fighter
항도자 [hyangdoja] n leader
허리 [hori] n waist
혀 [hyo] n tongue
혁명 [hyongmyong] n revolution
혁명가 [hyongmyong·ga] n revolu-
tionary
혁명렬사관 [hyongmyongryolsa
mung] n revolutionary marty-
rs' cemetery
혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] n
revolutionary ideas
혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] 수준 high
혁명하다 [hyongmyonghada] vi make revolution
혁신 [hyoksin] n innovation
현관 [hyon.gwan] n front door, entrance
현대적 [hyondaiejok] 수준 modern
현명하다 [hyonmyonghada] a wise
현실적 [hyonsiljok] 수준 real
현저하다 [hyonjohada] a remarkable
혈압 [hyorap] n blood pressure
협동농민 [hyopdongnongmin] n co-operative peasant
협동화 [hyopdonghwa] n co-operativization
협정 [hyopjong] n agreement
형 [hyong] n elder brother
형제 [hyongje] n brother
형제국가 [hyongjegukga] n fraternal country
형제당 [hyongjedang] n fraternal party
형제적 [hyongjejok] n fraternal
호 [ho] n number
호수 [hosu] n lake
호실 [hosil] n room
호실관리원 [hosilgwalliwon] n chambermaid
혹은 [hogun] a or
혼자 [honja] n alone
후계자 [hugyeja] n successor
후대 [hude] n coming generation
후추가루 [huchuggaru] n pepper
후예 [hue] n descendant
후용하다 [hullyunghada] a fine
휴게실 [hyugyesil] n lounge
휴식 [hyusik] n rest; interval
흐르다 [huruda] vi flow
흐리다 [hurida] a cloudy
확미 [hungmi] n interest
확 [him] n power, might
확살 [himsal] n muscles
확짓 [himggot] ad with all one’s strength
해1 [hae] n sun
해2 [hae] n year
해돋이 [haedoji] n sunrise
해방 [haebang] n liberation
해방되다 [haebangdoeda] vi be liberated
해방하다 [haebanghada] vt liberate
해빛 [haetbbit] n sunshine
핵무기 [haengmugi] n nuclear
핵 [haem] n moon, weapons
행복 [haengbok] n happiness
행복하다 [haengbokada] a happy
행성 [haengsong] n planet
행진하다 [haengjinhada] vi march
해여자다 [heyojida] vi part from
회견 [hoegyon] n interview
회담 [hoedam] n talk
회복되다 [hoebokdoeda] vi be recovered
회복하다 [hoebokhada] vt recover
회화 [hoehwa] n conversation
회의 [hoeui] n meeting
희다 [huida] a white
화장품 [hwajangpum] n cosmetic

화영 [hwanyong] n welcome  환영하다 [hwanyonghada] vt welcome  활짝 [hwaljjak] ad widely


바 [bb]

빠다 [bbada] n butter
빠르다 [bbaruda] a quick, fast
빨갈다 [bbalgata] a red
빨리 [bballi] ad quickly, fast
빨래집 [bballaejjip] n laundry
빨찌산 [bbaljjisan] n partisan
빵 [bbang] n bread
唔 [bbyam] n cheek

뻐 [bbosu] n bus
뼈스장류소 [bbosujongryuso] n bus stop
뻐 [bbyo] n bone
뻐로 [bbotu] n boat
続きを読む라 [bbunmanamira] phrase not only..., but ...

ㅅ [ss]

싸다¹ [ssada] a cheap
싸다² [ssada] vt wrap
싸우다 [ssauda] vt fight
싸움 [ssauum] n fight
쌀 [ssal] n rice
쌍 [ssang] n pair
쌓다 [ssata] vt pile up, heap up
쌓이다 [ssaida] pass be piled
써널다 [ssonota] v with con fo

register
쓰다¹ [ssuda] a bitter
쓰다² [ssuda] vt write
쓰다³ [ssuda] vt put on
쓰다⁴ [ssuda] vt use
쓰이다 [ssuida] pass be written
쓸다 [ssulda] vt sweep [ed
씻기다 [ssitgida] pass be wash-
씻다 [ssitda] vt wash

쩌 [jj]

짜다 [jjada] vt weave
짝 [jjak] n pair; piece
짧다 [jjapda] a short

зван양말 [jjalbunyangmal] n
쪼다 [jjitda] vt tear [socks
째 [jjae] suffix "order"

아 [a] int oh!
아니 [ani] ad not
아니다 [anida] a not

아니하다¹ [anihada] a not
아니하다² [anihada] vt not
아들 [adul] n son

405
아름다움 [arumdaum] n beauty
아름답게 [arumdapge] a ad fo beautifully
아름답다 [arumdapda] a beauti-
 아래에 [araee] n dat below
아마 [ama] ad perben
아무 [amu] pron anyone
아무리 [amuri] ad how
아메리카 [amerika] n America
아버지 [aboji] n father
아세아 [asea] n Asia
아버지 [aboji] n father
아저씨 [ajossi] n uncle
아주 [aju] ad very
아직 [ajik] ad still
아침 [achim] n morning
아침노을 [achimnoul] n morning
glow fast
아침식사 [achimsiksa] n break-
아프다 [apuda] a painful
아프리카 [apurika] n Africa
아홉 [ahop] num nine
아홉번째 [ahopbonjae] num
ninth
아흔 [ahun] num ninety
아끼다 [aggida] vt spare
아이 [ai] n child
아이고 [aigo] int ah!
안 [an] ad not
안경 [an-gyong] n glasses
안개 [an-gae] n fog
안과의사 [an-gwauisa] n oculist
안녕 [annyong] n well-being
안녕하다 [annyonghada] a well
안내서 [annaeso] n guide-book
안내하다 [annaehada] vt show
안내원 [annaewon] n guide
안다 [anda] vt embrace
안마 [anma] n massage
안정하다 [anjonghada] vi. vt
keep quiet
안해 [anhae] n wife
안다 [anda] vi sit
앞 [anchida] causat v set
앞다 [anta] a not
앞다2 [anta] vt not
알곡 [algok] n grain
알게 되다 [alge toeda] v with
ad fo get aquainted with,
get to know
알다 [alda] vt know /a mottled
알락달락하다 [allakdallakada]
알리다 [allida] causat v let
know, inform
앞다 [alta] vi, vt be ill
압박 [apbak] n oppression
압박하다 [apbakada] vt oppress
앞날 [amnal] n future
앞문 [ammun] n front gate
앞으로 [apuro] n inst forward
앞에 [ape] n dat before
야 [ya] int oh!
약1 [yak] n medicine
약2 [yak] pre-n about
약간 [yakgan] n few, little
약국 [yakguk] n pharmacy
약속하다 [yaksokada] vt promise
약수 [yaksu] n mineral water
약하다 [yakada] a weak
양고기 [yang-gogi] n mutton
양복 [yangbok] n clothes
양복점 [yangbokjom] n tailor
앞다 [yatda] a shallow /shop
어느 [omu] pron which
어둠다 [odupda] a dark
어디 [odi] pron what place
어디에 [odie] pron dat where
어디에서나 [odiesona] pron loc everywhere
어렵다 [oryopda] a difficult
어른 [orun] n adult
어리다 [orida] a young
어리이 [orinj] n child
어머니 [onomi] n mother
어머님 [omonim] n mother (in the meaning of respect)
어부 [obu] n fisherman
어서 [oso] ad please
어지럽다 [ojiropda] a giddy; dirty
어제 [oje] n yesterday
어촌 [ochon] n fishing village
어깨 [oggae] n shoulder
어떻게 [oddoke] a ad fo how
어떻다 [oddota] a any
어찌 [ojji] ad how
억 [ok] num hundred million
억세게 [oksege] a ad fo firmly
억압 [ogap] n oppression
언어 [ondok] n hill
언제 [onje] pron when
언제나 [onjena] ad always
언어 [ono] n language
얼굴 [olgul] n face
얼다 [olda] vi freeze
얼마 [olma] pron how many, how much
얼마나 [olmana] ad how
얼음 [orum] n ice
얼음보송이 [orumbosung-i] n ice-cream
없어 [opsi] ad without
 여기 [yogi] pron this place
 여기로 [yogiro] pron inst here, to this place
 여기에 [yogie] pron dat here
 여덟 [yodol] num eight
 여덟 (번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae] num eighth
 여덟 [yodun] num eighty
 여러 [yoro] pre-n many
 여름 [yorum] n summer
 여보십시오 [yobosipsio] int hullo
 여섯 [yosot] num six [sixth
 여섯 (번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae] num
 여위다 [yowida] vi become thin
 역 [yok] n (railway) station
 역할 [yokal] n role
 연극 [yon-guk] n performance
 연단 [yondan] n platform
 연설 [yonsol] n speech
 연설하다 [yonsolhada] vi make speech
 연필 [yonpil] n pencil
 연회 [yonhoe] n banquet (hall
 연회장 [yonhoejang] n banquet
 열1 [yol] n heat
 열2 [yol] num ten
 열다 [yolda] vi open
 열두 [yoldu] num twelve
 열두 (번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae] num twelfth
 열둘 [yoldul] num twelve
 열리다 [yollida] pass be opened
 열심히 [yolsimi] ad diligently
 열쇠 [yolsoe] n key
 열다 [yolhana] num eleven
 열한 [yolhan] num eleven
 열한 (번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]
num eleventh
열째 [yoljae] num tenth
얇다 [jopda] a thin
엽서 [jopso] n postcard
영국 [yong·guk] n England
영국사람 [yong·guksam] n Englishman
영광 [yong·gwang] n glory
영광스럽다 [yong·gwangsuropa] a glorious
영국조사진 [yongjosajon] n English-Korean dictionary
영화 [yonghwae] n film /house
영화관 [yonghwagwan] n cinema
영어 [yong·o] n English
영어판 [yong·opan] n English edition
영웅하다 [yong·yonghada] a heroic
영웅 [yong·ung] n hero
영웅적 [yong·ungjok] n heroic
영예 [yong·ye] n honour
영예롭다 [yong·yeropda] a honourable
영원하다 [yong·wonhada] a eternal
영원히 [yong·woni] ad forever
오 [o] num five
오 [o] int oh! , o!
오늘 [onul] n today
오다 [oda] vi come
오르다 [oruda] vi rise; get on
오른쪽 [orunjok] n right side
오리불고기 [oribulgogi] n roast duck
오십 [osip] num fifty
오전 [ojon] n beforenoon
오전에 [ojone] n dat in the beforenoon
오직 [ojik] ad only
오한 [ohan] n chill
오후 [ohu] n afternoon
오후에 [ohue] n dat in the afternoon
오빠 [obba] n elder brother
오이 [oi] n cucumber
오월 [owol] n May
운 [on] pre-n whole
올리다 [ollida] causat v raise
올해 [olhae] n this year
올다 [olta] a right
옷 [ot] n clothes (cloakroom
옷을만기는곳 [onmatginungot] n
용호하다 [onghohada] vt defend
용구하다 [yoguhada] vt demand
요드링크 [yodutingku] n iodine
요람 [yoram] n cradle [tincture
요일 [yoil] n weekday
용감하다 [yong·gammahada] a brave
용감히 [yong·gami] ad bravely
용기 [yong·gi] n courage
용무 [yongmu] n business, affair
용병 [yongmaeng] n courage
용서하다 [yongsohada] vt forgive
우리 [uri] pron we
우뢰 [uroe] n thunder
우산 [usan] n umbrella
우편 [upyon] n post
우편국 [upyon·guk] post office
우편료금 [upyonryogum] n postage
우편함 [upyonham] n letter box
우편]엽서 [(upyon)jopso] n postcard
우표 [upyo] n stamp
우연히 [uyoni] ad by chance
우에 [ue] n dat above
운동 [undong] n movement
운명 [unmyong] n. destiny
운전수 [unjonsu] n. driver
운하 [unha] n. canal
울다 [ulda] vi. weep
울리다 [ullida] causat v. make
울리다 [ullida] vi. sound
움직이다 [umjigida] vi., vt. move
웃기다 [utgida] causat v. make laugh
웃다 [utda] vi., vt. laugh
옷 [udot] n. coat
움대하다 [ungdaehada] a. grand
움장하다 [ungjanghada] a. grand, magnificent
fo. to one's regret
유격구 [yugyokgu] n. guerrilla
area, partisan area
유격대원 [yugyokdaewon] n. guer
리 [yuri] n. glass, rilla
유명하다 [yumyonghada] a.
famous
유치원 [yuchiwon] n. kindergart-
유쾌하다 [yukwaehada] a.
pleasant
유일척 [yuiljok] n. undivided
움 [uddum] n. first
은 [un] n. silver
은행 [unhaeng] n. bank
음다 [umda] vi. recite
음식 [umsik] n. food
음악 [umak] n. music
음악가 [umakga] n. musician
음악회 [umakoe] n. concert
응 [ung] int. yes
응접실 [ungjopsil] n. drawing
room
이 1 [i] num. two
이 2 [i] pron. this
이기다 [igida] vt. win
이렇게 [irokke] a. ad. fo. so
이렇다 [irota] a. such
이르다 [iruda] vi. arrive
이름 [irum] n. name
이리 [iri] ad. so
이마 [ima] n. forehead
이미 [imi] ad. already, tribute
이바지하다 [ibajihada] vi.
con.
이발 [ibbal] n. tooth
이상 [isang] n. more than
이슬 [isul] n. dew
이십 [isip] num. twenty
이제 [ije] n. now
이층 [ichung] n. first floor
이야기 [iyagi] n. story
이언용 방 [iinyong bang] n.
twin-
bedded room
이월 [iwal] n. February
익다 [ikda] vi. ripen
인도하다 [indohada] vi.
lead
인민 [inmin] n. people
인민경제 [inmin-gyongje] n.
national economy, Army
인민군 [inmin-gun] n. People's
인민군대 [inmin-gundaeg] n.
People's Army
인민대중 [inmindaejung] n.
masses of the people
인민대학습당 [inmindaeaksup
dang] n. Grand People's Study
House
인민문화궁전 [inminmunhawung
jon] n. People's Palace of
Culture
임민정권 [inminjong-gwon] n people's power
인민학교 [inminhakgyo] n primary school
인사 [insa] n greeting
인사하다 [insahada] vi greet
인삼술 [insamsul] n insam wine, ginseng wine
인상 [insang] n impression
인체 [inche] n human body
인력 [interi] n intellectual
인형 [inhyon] n doll
일 [il] n work
일 [il] num one
일 [il] n day
일곱 [ilgop] num seven
일곱 번째 [ilgop(bon)jjae] num seventh
일다 [ilnda] vi rise
일등 [ildung] n first class
일등급 [ildung-gup] n first class
일방 [ilbang] n one side
일시적 [ilsijok] n temporary
일식 [ilsik] n set
일층 [ilchung] n ground floor
일하다 [ilhada] vi work
일흔 [ilhun] num seventy
일찌기 [iljjigi] ad early
일찍 [iljjik] ad early
일어나다 [ironada] vi take place; rise
일요일 [iryoil] n Sunday
일요일에 [iryoire] n dat on Sunday
일집 [iryonjang] n single room
월 [irwol] n January
읽다 [ikda] vi read
읽다 [iltta] vi lose
입무 [immu] n task
입 [ip] n mouth
입구 [ipgu] n entrance
입국 [ipguk] n entry
입국수속 [ipguksusok] n entry procedures
입다 [ipda] vi put on
입술 [ipsul] n lip
입원하다 [ipwonhada] vi go to hospital
잉크 [ingku] n ink
잊다 [itda] vi forget
잎 [ip] n leaf
잎다 [itda] vi there is, be
애 [ae] n child
애국주의 [aegukjuui] n patriotism
애기 [aegi] n baby
애쓰다 [aessuda] v with n exert oneself
애 [yae] int hullo
예 [ye] int yes
예순 [yesun] num sixty
예술 [yesul] n art
예술축전 [yesulchukjon] n art festival
외교 [oegyo] n diplomacy
외교관 [oegyogwan] n diplomat
외국 [oeguk] n foreign country
외국어 [oegugo] n foreign language
외국인 [oegugin] n foreigner
외과의사 [oeggwauisa] n surgeon
외출하다 [oechulhada] vi go out
외투 [oetu] n overcoat
원쪽 [oenjjok] n left side
위 [wi] n stomach
위대하다 [widaehada] a great
위신 [wisin] n dignity
위생실 [wisaengsil] n toilet
위하다 [wihada] vt serve
위하여 [wihayo] v con fo for
위험 [wihom] n danger
위원장 [wiwonjang] n chairman
위원회 [wiwonhoe] n committee
의견 [uiygon] n opinion
의무 [uimu] n duty
의무적 [uimujok] n obligatory
의사 [uija] n doctor
의자 [uijong] n chair
의정 [uijong] n agenda
의하여 [uihayo] v con fo by,
thanks to.
의의 [uuiui] n significance

ENGLISH- KOREAN VOCABULARY

abolish 철폐하다 [cholpehada] vt
abolition 철폐 [cholpe] n
about 관하여 [kwanhayyo] v con
fo; 대략 [taeryak] n: 약 [yak]
pre-n
above 우에 [ue] n dat
absorbent cotton 탈지면 [taljimyon] n
academy of sciences 과학원 [kwa
hagwon] n
accept 받아들이다 [padadurida] vt
account 계산서 [kyesanso] n
achieve 달성하다 [talsonghada] vt
acrobatics 교예 [kyoye] n
actively 적극적으로 [ckokgukjogu
ro] n inst
actor 배우 [paeu] n
address 주소 [chuso] n

완수하다 [wansuhada] vt fulfil
완전하다 [wanjonhada] a perfect
왕복차표 [wangbokchapyo] n
round-trip ticket
원 [won] n circle; won (unit
of Korean currency)
원수 [wonsu] n marshall
원수 [wonssu] n enemy
원인 [wonin] n cause
월 [wol] n month
월요일 [woryoil] n Monday
왜 [wae] ad why
왜나하면 [waenyahamyon] phrase
for, because
웨치다 [wechida] vi, vt cry
웨 [wen] pre-n what

addresssee 받는 사람 [pannunsaram]
 n with att fo
adhesive tape 반장교 [panchanggo] n
admire 갑탄하다 [kamthanhada] vi
adult 어른 [orun] n
advance 나아가다 [naagada] vi,
전진하다 [chonjinjada] vi
aeroplane 비행기 [pihaeng-gi] n
Africa 아프리카 [apurika] n
after 후에 [hue] n dat
afternoon 오후 [ohu] n
again 다시 [tasi] ad
age 나이 [nai] n; 살 [sal] n
agenda 의정 [uijong] n
aggression 침략 [chimryak] n
aggressor 침략자 [chimryakja] n
agreement 협정 [hyopjong] n
agricultural 농업의 [nongobui] n
gen

agriculture 농사 [nongsa] n
ah! 아이고 [aigo] int
air 공기 [kong-gi] n  [onji] n
air letter 항공편지 [hang-gongpy]
airline ticket 비행기표 [pihaeng-gipyo] n
airman 비행사 [pihaengsa] n
airport 비행장 [pihaengjiang] n
airport tax 비행장관세 [pihaeng-jiangwanse] n
all 다 [ta] ad, 모두 [modu] ad;
모든 [modun] pre-n;전부 [chonbu] n
alliance 연합 [ryonhap] n; 동맹 [tongmaeng] n
almost 거의 [koui] ad
alone 혼자 [honja] n
always 언제나 [onjena] ad; 늘 [nul] ad; 항상 [hangsang] ad
ambassador 대사 [taesa] n
America 아메리카 [amerika] n
and 및 [mit] ad, 그리고 [kuringo] v con fo
animal 동물 [tongmul] n
anniversary 주년 [chunyon] n; 년 [tol] n
announcement 광고 [kwang-go] n
annual plan 연간계획 [nyon-ganggyehoek] n
another person 남 [nam] n
answer 대답 [taedap] n; 대답하다 [taedapada] vi
anti-imperialism 반제 [panje] n
anti-imperialist 반제의 [panje-i] n gen, 반제적 [panjejok] n
anti-imperialist solidarity 반제연대성 [panjeryondaessong] n
anti-Japanese 반일의 [panirui] n
anti-Japanese 항일의 [hang-irui] n gen
anti-Japanese fighter 항일투사 [hang-altusa] n
anti-US (imperialist) 반미 [panmi] n
any 어떤 [oddon] a att fo
anyone 아무 [amu] pron
apart 따로 [ddaro] ad
appear 나타나다 [natanada] vi
appetite 식욕 [sityok] n
apple 사과 [sagwa] n  [vt]
apply 적용하다 [chogyong-hada]
approval 찬성 [chansong] n
April 사월 [sawol] n
aquarium 수족관 [sujokgwan] n
arbitrarily 합부로 [hamburo] ad
Arch of Triumph 개성문 [kaesomun] n
arduous 간호한 [kan-gohan] a
att fo
arm 팔 [pal] n; 무장하다 [mujang-hada] vi, vt
armaments 무장 [mujang] n
armistice agreement 정전협정 [chong-jonhyopjong] n
army 군대 [kundae] n
armyman 군인 [kunin] n
arrival 도착 [tochak] n
arrive 도착하다 [iruda] vi, 도착하다
[tochakada] vi
art 예술 [yesul] n
art festival 예술축전 [yesulchukjon] n
article 논설 [ronsol] n
as 같이 [kachi] ad
ashtray 체 للغاية [chaetori] n
Asia 아시아 [asea] n
ask 물다 [mutda] vi, vt
assort 고르다 [koruda] vi
at any cost 기어이 [kioi] ad
attention 주의 [chuui] n
attitude 태도 [taedo] n
August 팔월 [parwol] n

baby 애기 [aegi] n
back 뒤 [twi] n; 등 [tung] n
bad 나쁜 [nabbun] a att fo
bag 가방 [kabang] n
baggage 짐 [chim] n
ball 공 [kong] n
ballet 바레유용 [paremuyong] n
banana 바나나 [panana] n
bandage 붕대 [pungdae] n
bank 은행 [unhaeng] n
banquet 연회 [yonhoe] n
banquet hall 연회장 [yonhoejang] n
barbarity 만행 [manhaeng] n
barber 리발사 [ribalsa] n
barber’s shop 리발소 [ribalso] n
barely 적우 [kyou] ad
barrel 통 [tong] n
base 기지 [kiji] n
basis 기본 [kibon] n
bath 목욕탕 [mogyoktang] n
bath-room 목욕실 [mogyoksil] n
bathe 목욕하다 [mogyokada] vi
bathing 목욕 [mogyok] n
battle 전투 [chontu] n
be 이다 [ida]end; 있다 [itda] vi;
계시다 [kyesida] vi
be born 태어나다 [taeyonada] vi,
출생하다 [chulsaenghada] vi,

authority 전위 [kwnwi] n
automation 자동화 [chadonghwa] n
autumn 가을 [kaul] n
aviation 항공 [hang, gong] n
ax 도끼 [togi] n
azalea 진달래 [chindallae] n

B

란생하다 [tansaenghada] vi
beat 치다 [chida] vt
beautiful 고운 [koun] a att fo
아름다운 [arundaun] a att fo
beautifully 아름답게 [arumapge]
a ad fo
beauty 아름다움 [arundaum] n
because 왜냐하면 [waenyahamyon]
phrase
become 되다 [toeda] vi
bed 침대 [chimdae] n
bedroom 침실 [chimsil] n
bee 벌 [pol] n
beef 소고기 [sogogi] n
beer 맥주 [maekju] n
before 앞에 [ape] n dat ;
[chone] n dat
beforehand 미리 [miri] ad
beforenoon 오전 [ojon] n
begin 시작하다 [sijakada] vi
beginning 시작 [sijak] n
behind 뒤에 [twie] n dat
belly 배 [pae] n
below 아래 [arae] n dat
besides 그 밖에 [kupage] n dat
with pron, 그뿐 아니라 [kubbuna
nira] phrase
best 가장 좋은 [kajangchoun] a att
better 나은 [naun] a att fo
bicycle 자전거 [chajon-go] n
bill 계산서 [kyesanso] n
billeting area 숙영지 [sugyongji] n
bind 묶다 [mukda] vt
bird 새 [sae] n
birthday 생일 [saeng-il] n
birthplace 난곳 [nan-got] n
bitter 쏟 [ssun] a att fo
black 깜은 [komun] a att fo
bloom 피다 [pida] vi
blue 빔 [purun] a att fo. 하늘
빛의 [hanulbichui] n gen [n
board of directors 리사회 [risahoe]
boarding card 학생권 [tapsung-gwon]
boat 보트 [bbootu] n

body 몸 [mom] n
boil 삶다 [samda] vt
boiled egg 삶은 닭알 [salmun tal
gal] n with att fo
boiled fish 지진 물고기 [chijin
mulgogi] n with att fo
boiled rice 밥 [pap] n
bold 냉담한 [taedamhan] a att fo
bombing 폭격 [pokgyok] n
bond 봉대 [nyudae] n
bone 뼈 [bbyo] n
book 책 [chaek] n; 권 [kwon] n
bookshop 책방 [chaekbang] n
bosom 몸 [pum] n
botanical garden 식물원 [singmu
rwon] n
both 양방의 [ssangbang-ui] n gen
bottle 봄 [pyong] n
bouquet 꽃다발 [ggotdabal] n
boy 소년 [sonyon] n
branch 가지 [kaji] n, 부문 [pumun]
brave 용감한 [yong gamhan] a att fo
bravely 용감히 [yong gami] ad
bread 빵 [bbang] n
break 끼다 [ggaeda] vt; 깨부시다
[ggbusida] vt
breakfast 아침식사 [achimsiksa]
n; 아침식사를 하다 [achimsiksa
ruhada] v with n
breast 가슴 [kasum] n
bridge 다리 [tari] n
bright 밝은 [palgun] a att fo
brilliant 찬연한 [chanyonhan] a
att fo
bring 가져오다 [kajiooda] vt; 가져다주다 [kajiyodajuda] vt
broadcast 방송하다 [pangsong ha
da] vt
broadcasting 방송 [pangsong] n
brother 형제 [hyongje] n
build 건설하다 [konsolhada] vt
burn 불타다 [pultada] vi
burn up 타오르다 [taoruda] vi
burst 뜨리다 [tojida] vi
bus 버스 [bbosu] n [so] n
bus stop 버스정류소 [bbosujongryu
busily 바빠 [pabbi] ad; 바쁘게
[pabbi] a att fo business 용무 [yongmu] n
busy 바쁜 [pabbusun] a att fo
but 그러나 [kuron]a] ad; 그럼치만
[kurochiman] a con fo; 그린데
[kuronde] a con fo
butter 빗다 [bbada] n
buy 사다 [sada] vt
buzz [pungbung] n
by [uihayo] v con fo
by air mail [hang.gong]

C

celebrate 쇼다 [soeda] vt
central 중심의 [chungsimui] n
gen; 중앙의 [chung.ang.ui] n
gen
centre 중심 [chungsim] n; 중앙 [chung.ang] n
certainly 반드시 [pandusi] ad
certificate 증명서 [chungmyongsso] n
chair 의자 [uija] n; 결상 [kol
sang] n; 강좌 [kangjwa] n
chairman 위원장 [wiwonjang] n
Chajusong 자주성 [chajussong] n
chambermaid 호실관리원 [hosilgwal
liwon] n
champagne 삼광주 [syampangju] n
change 변하다 [pyonhada] vi.,vt
Changgwansan Hotel 창광산려관
[chang.gwansan ryogwan] n
character 성격 [song.gyok] n; 품
성 [pumsong] n
cheap 녹은 [nugun] a att fo, 산
[ssan] a att fo
cheek 빗 [bbyam] n
cheer 환호 [hwanho] n; 환호하다
[hwanhohada] vi
cheese 치즈 [chiju] n
chemistry 화학 [hwahak] n
chess 장기 [chang.gi] n
chestnut 밤 [pam] n
chicken 닭고기 [takgogi] n
child 아이 [ai] n, 아 [ae] n; 어
린이 [orini] n

pyon] n
by chance 우연히 [uyoni] ad

C

celebrate 쇼다 [soeda] vt
central 중심의 [chungsimui] n
gen; 중앙의 [chung.ang.ui] n
gen
centre 중심 [chungsim] n; 중앙 [chung.ang] n
certainly 반드시 [pandusi] ad
certificate 증명서 [chungmyongsso] n
chair 의자 [uija] n; 결상 [kol
sang] n; 강좌 [kangjwa] n
chairman 위원장 [wiwonjang] n
Chajusong 자주성 [chajussong] n
chambermaid 호실관리원 [hosilgwal
liwon] n
champagne 삼광주 [syampangju] n
change 변하다 [pyonhada] vi.,vt
Changgwansan Hotel 창광산려관
[chang.gwansan ryogwan] n
character 성격 [song.gyok] n; 품
성 [pumsong] n
cheap 녹은 [nugun] a att fo, 산
[ssan] a att fo
cheek 빗 [bbyam] n
cheer 환호 [hwanho] n; 환호하다
[hwanhohada] vi
cheese 치즈 [chiju] n
chemistry 화학 [hwahak] n
chess 장기 [chang.gi] n
chestnut 밤 [pam] n
chicken 닭고기 [takgogi] n
child 아이 [ai] n, 아 [ae] n; 어
린이 [orini] n
Children's Union member 소년단원 [sonyondanwon] 
chill 오환 [ohan] 
chocolate 초콜릿 [chyokolletu] 
Chollima 천리마 [chollima] 
Chollima Statue 천리마동상 [chollimadangsang] 
chopsticks 저각각 [choggarak] 
chorus 합창 [hapchang] 
 cigarette 담배 [tambae] 
 cinema house 영화관 [yonghwa 
circus 교예 [kyoye] 
citizen 공민 [kongmin] 
city 도시 [tosi] 
city bus 시내버스 [sinaebosu] 
city centre 시내 [sinae 
city sightseeing 시내관광 [sinae 
guya] 
city sightseeing bus 시내관광버스 
sinaegwan gwangblossu] 
claim tag 질표 [chimpyo] 
class 계급 [kyegup] 
classical music 교정음악 [kojon umak] 
classroom 교실 [kyosil] 
clean 깨끗한 [ggaeggutan] 
clear 맑은 [malgun] 
cloakroom 옷가방 [onmatginun got] 
clothes 옷 [ot] 
cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok] 
cloud 구름 [kurum] 
cloudy 흐린 [hurin] 
clubhouse 구락부 [kurakbu] 
coal 석탄 [soktan] 
coke 안부 [tanbu] 
coat 옷 [udot] 
cock-a-doodle-doo 꼬꼬꼬 [ggoggi 
cocoa 코코아 [kokoa] 
cold 감기 [kamgi] 
colour 색 [saek] 
comb 뼈 [pit] 
combination 결합 [kyolhap] 
combined 오다 [oda] 
combined back 돌아오다 [toraoda] 
combined in 들어오다 [turooda] 
combined together 모이다 [moida] 
coming coming generation 후대 [hudaе] 
commemoration 기념 [kinyom] 
commerce 상업 [sang op] 
committee 위원회 [wiwonhoe] 
communication 교통 [kyotong] 
communicated 흉노니계 [kommyuni ke] 
communism 공산주의 [kongsanju 
communist 공산주의자 [kongsan juujja] 
computer 공산주의적 [kongsan juujok] 
compartment 침대칸 [chimdae] 
matginungot] 
cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok] 
cloud 구름 [kurum] 
cloudy 흐린 [hurin] 
clubhouse 구락부 [kurakbu] 
coal 석탄 [soktan] 
coke 안부 [tanbu] 
coat 옷 [udot] 
cock-a-doodle-doo 꼬꼬꼬 [ggoggi 
cocoa 코코아 [kokoa] 
cold 감기 [kamgi] 
colour 색 [saek] 
comb 뼈 [pit] 
combination 결합 [kyolhap] 
combined 오다 [oda] 
combined back 돌아오다 [toraoda] 
combined in 들어오다 [turooda] 
combined together 모이다 [moida] 
coming coming generation 후대 [hudaе] 
commemoration 기념 [kinyom] 
commerce 상업 [sang op] 
committee 위원회 [wiwonhoe] 
communication 교통 [kyotong] 
communicated 흉노니계 [kommyuni ke] 
communism 공산주의 [kongsanju 
communist 공산주의자 [kongsan juujja] 
computer 공산주의적 [kongsan juujok] 
compartment 침대칸 [chimdae] 
matginungot] n

cloth 천 [chon] n

clothes 옷 [ot] n, 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] n

clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon]

clothes 옷 [ot] n, 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot] n, 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok]

cloth 천 [chon] 
clothes 옷 [ot], 양복 [yangbok]

}
complicated 복잡한 [pokjapan] n
att fo
composer 작곡가 [chakgokga] n
comrade 동무 [tongmu] n, 동지 [tongji] n
comrade-in-arms 전우 [chonu] n
concert 음악회 [umakoe] n
conclude 맺다 [maetda] vt
conclusion 체결 [chegyol] n
concurrently 겸 [kyom] ad
condition 조건 [choggon] n
conductor 차장 [chajang] n
confront 대하다 [taehada] vt
congratulate 축하하다 [chukahada] vt, 경축하다 [kyongchukada] vt
congratulation 축하 [chuka] n
congratulatory telegram 축전 [chukjon] n
connection 연결 [ryon.gyol] n
considerably 상당히 [sangdang.i] ad
construction 건설 [konsol] n
consul 영사 [ryongsan] n
consulate 영사관 [ryongsagwan] n
continue 계속하다 [kyesokada] vt
continuously 계속히 [ryonio] ad; 계속 [kyesok] n
contract 계약 [kyeyak] n
contribute 이바지하다 [ibajiha] vi
convenient 편리한 [pyollihan] a
conversation 회화 [hoehwa] n
cook 취사원 [chwisawon] n
cool 시늘한 [sonulhan] a att fo
co-operative peasant 협동농민
co-operativization 협동화 [hyopdongnongmin] n
copy 부 [pu] n
corridor 복도 [pokdo] n
cosmetic 화장품 [hwajangpum] n
cost 값이 들다 [kapsi tulda] phrase
cough 기침 [kichim] n; 기침하다 [kichimhada] vi
count 세다 [seda] vt, 계산하다 [kyesanha] vt
counter 계산대 [kyesanidae] n
country 나라 [nara] n
county 군 [kun] n
courage 용기 [yong.gi] n, 용맹 [yongmaeng] n
cover 덮다 [topda] vt
cow 소 [so] n
coward 비겁한자 [pigopanja] n
cradle 요람 [yoram] n
crawl 기다 [kida] vi 'vt
create 창조하다 [changjohada] vi, vt
credentials 신임장 [sinimjang] n
cross 전도다 [konnuda] vi, vt
crossing 건너가는데 [konnogunan.got] n
crossroad 십자로 [sipjaro] n
crosswalk 건널길 [konnumgil] n
cry 소리치다 [sorichida] v with n
cucumber 오이 [oi] n
cultural clubhouse 문화회관 [mun
hwahoeugwan] n, [gungjon] n
cultural palace 문화궁전 [munhwah
muryeong] n
cultural revolution 문화혁명 [mun
hwahyongmyeong] n
culture 문화 [munhwah] n
cup 찬 [chan] n
curio 골동품 [koldongpum] n
curio shop 골동품상점 [koldong
pumsangjom] n
custom [pungsup] n
customs 관세 [kwans] n; 세관

cut 자르다 [charuda] vt

dance 춤 [chum] n
dancer 무용가 [muyong ga] n
danger 위험 [wihom] n
dark 어두운 [oduun] a att fo
date 날자 [nalja] n
date of birth 날짜 [nannal] n
daughter 딸 [ddal] n
dawn 밤 [pakda] a; 동 튀다
[tong tuda] phrase
day 날 [nal] n; 일 [il] n
day train 날차 [natcha] n
daylight 낮 [nat] n; i fo
dazzling 눈부신 [nunbusin] a att

dear 친애하는 [chinae hanun] v
death 죽음 [chugum] n att fo
debate 토론하다 [toronhada] vi; 토론하다 [ronjaenghada] vi; 토론 [toron] n; 논쟁 [ron jaeng] n
debater 토론자 [toronja] n
debt 빚 [pit] n
December 십월 [sibi wol] n
decide 결정하다 [kyoljonghada]

vt
decisive 결정적 [kyoljongjok] n
declare 선고하다 [sin gohada] vt
deep 깊은 [kipun] a att fo
deeply 깊이 [kipi] ad
defend 지키다 [chikida] vt; 몹호하다 [onghohada] vt
delegate 사절 [sajol] n; 대표

taepyo] n
department 대표단 [taepyodan] n
demand 요구하다 [yoguhada] vt
demarcation line 분계선 [pun gye son] n
democracy 민주주의 [minju juui] n

democratic 민주주의적 [minju juui jok] n
demonstrate 면치다 [ddolchida] vt
dentist 구강과의사 [kugang gwa uisa] n
department 부 [pu] n; jom n
department store 백화점 [paek wa

departure 출발 [chulbal] n; 출국
[chulguk] n
depth 깊이 [kipi] n
deputy 대의원 [taeu iwon] n; 대리인 [taeriin] n
dermatologist 피부과의사 [pibugg wauisa] n
desk 책상 [chaeksang] n
dessert 식후다과 [sikudagwa] n

destination 목적지 [mokjokji] n

destination of the journey 력행목적지 [ryohaengmokjokji] n
destiny 운명 [unmyong] n

destroy 파괴하다 [pagoehada] vt
destruction 파괴 [pago] n
determine 결심하다 [kyolsimhada]

vi; vt
development 발전시키다 [paljonsikida]
causat vt; 현상하다 [hyonsanghada] vt
development [paljon] n
devote 바치다 [pachida] vt
dew 이슬 [isul] n
diarrhoea 설사 [solsa] n
dictatorship 독재 [tokjae] n
dictionary 사전 [sajon] n
die 죽다 [chukda] vi
difference 차이 [chai] n
different 다른 [tarun] a att fo
differently 달리 [talli] ad
difficult 어려운 [oryoun] a att fo
dignity 위신 [wisin] n
diligent 부지런한 [pujirohan] a att fo
diligently 부지런히 [pujironi] ad,
dilemma 요심의 [yolsimi] ad [dang] n
dining car 편의식당 [ryolchasik]
dining room 식당 [sikdang] n
dinner hour 점심시간 [chomsimsigan] n
diplomacy 외교 [oegyo] n
diplomat 외교관 [oegyogwan] n
direction 방향 [panghyang] n
director 지배인 [chibaein] n
dirty 다리운 [toroun] a att fo,
dirty 이지러운 [ojiroun] a att fo;
dirty 다리하다 [toropida] vt
disappear 사라지다 [sarajida] vi
discipline 규율 [kyuyul] n
discuss 토의하다 [touihada] vt
dish 료리 [ryori] n

distinguish 구별하다 [kubyolhada]
divide 나누다 [nanuda] vt; 갈라
지다 [kallajida] vi
do 하다 [hada] vt
do not know 모르다 [moruda] vt
doctor 의사 [uisa] n
dog 개 [kae] n
dogmatism 교조주의 [kyojojuui] n
doll 인형 [inhyong] n
dollar 달러 [ddalla] n
domestic animal 집집승 [chipjim]
door 문 [mun] n [sung] n
door of the kitchen 부엌문 [puongmun] n

drawing room 음성실 [ungjopsil]
dream 꿈 [ggum] n
drink 마시다 [masida] vt
drive out 물어내다 [moranaeda]
vt, 내쫓다 [naejjotda] vt
driver 자동차운전자 [chadongchaun
jonsu] n, 운전자 [unjonsu] n
derop behind 뒤떨어지다 [twiddor
ojida] vi
derop in 뒤따라 [tullida] vi
dry 마른 [marun] a att of
duty 의무 [uimu] n
dwelling 산림집 [sallimjip] n, 주택 [chutaek] n
earby jar 홍 [tok] n
east 동쪽 [tongjjok] n; 동쪽
의 [tongjjogui] n gen
easy 쉬운 [swiun] a att fo
eat 먹다 [mokda] vt, 찐수이다 [chapsusida] vt
economic 경제의 [kyongjeui] n
gen; 경제적 [kyongjejok] n
economy 경제 [kyongje] n
educate 교육하다 [kyoyukada] vt.
 교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt
education 교육 [kyoyuk] n, 교양
 [kyoyang] n
educator 교양자 [kyoyangja] n
egg 닭알 [talgal] n  [num
eight 여덟 [yodol] num, 팔 [pal]
eighth 여덟 번째 [yodol(bon)jjae]
 num  [palsip] num
eighty 여든 [yodun] num, 팔십
elbow 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] n
elder brother 형 [hyong] n, 오빠
 [obba] n
eldest sister 맏누이 [mannui] n
elect 선거하다 [son.gohada] vt
election 선거 [son.go] n
electric 전기의 [chon.giui] n gen
electric train 전기차 [chon.gich a] n
electricity 전기 [chon.gi] n
elevate 높이다 [nopida] vt
elevator 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] n
eleven 열일이나 [yolhana] num, 열
 한 [yolhan] num, 십일 [sib il] num
eleventh 열한 번째 [yolhan(bon) jjae] num
embassy 대사관 [taesagwan] n
embrace 안다 [anda] vt
employee 종업원 [chong.obwon] n
encirclement 포위 [powi] n
end 끝 [ggut] n
enemy 적 [chok] n
engineer 기사 [kisa] n
England 영국 [yong.guk] n
English 영어 [yong.o] n; 영어의
 [yong.oui] n gen
English edition 영어판 [yong.opan]
English-Korean dictionary 영조사 전 [yong.josajon] n
Englishman 영국 사람 [yong.guk saram] n
enjoy 누리다 [nurida] vt [att fo
enough 충분한 [chungbunhan] a
enterprise 기업소 [kiopso] n
entertainent 재미하다 [taejopada] vt
entrance 들어가는 곳 [tuorganun.
got] n, 입구 [ipgu] n
entree 첨음식 [chanumsik] n
entrust 맡기다 [matgida] causat v
entry 입국 [ipguk] n
envelope 봉투 [pongtsu] n
equipment 장비 [changbi] n
era 기원 [kiwon] n; 시대 [sidae] n
escalator 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik sung.gang.gi] n
especially 특히 [tuki] ad, 특별히
[tukbyori] ad  [att fo
eternal 영원한 [yong.wonhan] a
Europe 구라파 [kurapa] n  [gen
European 구라파의 [kurapauti] n
European food 구라파음식 [kura
paumsik] n
even if 비록 [pirok] ad
evening 저녁 [chonyok] n
every 매 [mae] pre-n
every day 매일 [maeil] n
everywhere 어디에서나 [odiesona]
pron loc
exactly 정 [ggok] ad
examination 시험 [sihom] n
exceed 초과하다 [chogwahada] vi, vt
exchange 교환 [kyohwan] n; 바꾸다 [pagguda] vt; 교환하다 [kyohwanhada] vt
exchange of notes 각서교환 [kaksogyohwan] n with n
exert oneself 에쓰다 [aessuda] v
exhibition 전람회 [chollamhoe] n; 전람관 [chollamgwon] n
existence 존재 [chonjae] n
exit 나가는곳 [naganun got] n; 출국 [chulguk] n

expensive 비싼 [pissan] a att fo
experience 경험 [kyonghom] n; 체험 [chehom] n; [vt
exploit 착취하다 [chakchwihada]
export 수출 [suchul] n; 수출하다 [suchulhada] vt n
export goods 수출품 [suchulpum]
express 표현하다 [pyohyonhada] vt; 급행열차 [kupaengryolcha] n
exterior 밖의 [paggui] n gen
eye 눈 [nun] n
eyebrow 눈썹 [nunsop] n

face 얼굴 [olgul] n
fact 사실 [sasil] n
factory 공장 [kongjang] n
faithful 충직한 [chungjikan] a att fo
fall 졸어지다 [ddorojida] vi
fall asleep 잠들다 [chamdulda] vi
family 가족 [kajok] n
family name 성 [song] n
famous 유명한 [yumyong, han] a att fo
famous spots 명승지 [myongsung ji] n
far 멀리 [mon] a att fo
far away 멀리 [molli] ad
fare 표값 [pyoggap] n
farm 농장 [nongjang] n
farmer 농민 [nongmin] n
farmer’s hut 농마집 [nongmakjip]
 n; 농마 [nongmak] n

fascism 패시즘 [pasijum] n
father 아버지 [aboji] n
fatherland 조국 [choguk] n
favour 더 좋아하다 [to choahada]
v; [con fo and] ad
fear 공포 [kongpo] n; 두려워하다 [turyowohada] vt
February 이월 [iwol] n
feel 느끼다 [nuggida] vt
female 여자 [nyoja] n
fertilizer 비료 [piryo] n
festival 축전 [chukjon] n
festival day 명절 [myongjol] n
few 적은 [chogun] a att fo; 약간 [yakgan] ad
fibre 섬유 [somyu] n
field 들 [tul] n; 발 [pat] n
fifth 다섯 번째 [tasot(bon) jja num
fifty 십 [swin] num. 오십 [osip]
fight [ssaum] n; 싸우다 [ssa
udal] vi
fighter 虎 사 [tusa] n
figure 수자 [sujja] n  [lim] n
film 영화 [yong-hwa] n, 필름 [pil
fine 홀루한 [hullyung, han] a att
fo
finger 손가락 [son, garak] n
fingernail 손톱 [sontop] n
finish 끝내다 [ggunnaeda] causat
v; 끝내다 [ggunnada] vi
fire 불 [pul] n
firmly 굳게 [kutge] a ad fo, 역
세계 [oksege] a ad fo
first 먼저 [monjo] ad, 처음 [cho
um] n; 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)
jae] num
[ri] n
fish foods 물고기로 [mulgogiryo
fish soup 생선국 [saengson, guk]n
fisherman 어부 [obu] n
fishing village 어촌 [ochon] n
fit 맞다 [matda] vi
five 다섯 [tasot] num, 오 [o] num
fizzy drink 사이다 [saida] n
flag 기발 [kitbal] n, 기차 [ki
chi] n
flesh 살 [sal] n
flight number 항로번호 [hangro
bonho] n
float 물다 [dduda] vi  f n
floor 바닥 [padak] n, 층 [chung
florist's shop 꽃방 [ggotbang] n
flow 흐르다 [huruda] vi
flower 꽃 [ggot] n
flower bud 꽃망울 [ggomnang, ul]n
fly 날다 [nalda] vi
fog 안개 [an, gae] n  [yong] n
folk dance 민족무용 [minjongmu
folk song 민요 [minyo] n
follow 따르다 [ddaruda] vt, 따라
가다 [ddaragada] vt
food 음식 [umsik] n
foodstuff 식료품 [singryopum] n
foot 발 [pal] n
football 축구 [chukgu] n
football player 축구선수 [chukgu
sonsu] n
football team 축구팀 [chukgutim]
for 위하여 [wihayo] v con fo, 대
하여 [taehayo] v con fo
for a while 잠시 [chamsi] ad
for ever 영원히 [yong·woni] ad
for oneself 스스로 [susuro] ad
for the first time 비로소 [piro
so] ad
fore 앞 [ap] n
forehead 이마 [ima] n
foreign 외국의 [oegugui] n gen.
대외적 [taeojeok] n, 만 곳의
[ddan kosui] n gen with pre-n
foreign country 외국 [oeguk] n
foreign language 외국어 [oegugo]n
foreign trade 외무역 [taeoemu
yok] n
foreigner 외국인 [oegugin] n
foreword 머리말 [morimal] n
forget 잊다 [itda] vt
forgive 용서하다 [yongsohada] vt
fork 포크 [poku] n
forked road 갈림길 [kallingil] n
forty 마흔 [mahun] num; 사십
[sasip] num
forward 앞으로 [apuro] n inst
foundation 기초 [kicho] n, 근본
[kunbon] n
fountain 분수 [punsu] n
from 부터 [puto] aux end
top (of) one’s heart
from the bottom of [chungsimuro] n inst
front 전선 [chonson] n
front desk 접수 [chopsu] n
front door 현관 [hyon.gwan] n
front gate 대문 [taemun] n;
front 만문 [ammun] n
fruit 과일 [kwail] n, 과실 [kwa sil] n
fruit juice 과일즙 [kwailjup] n
full 가득한 [kadukan] a att fo
g-function 기능 [kinung] n
future 앞날 [amnal] n, 미래 [miraе]
gains 경취물 [chonchwil] n
garden 마당 [madang] n
gate 문 [mun] n
gauze 가제 [kaje] n
gen general 장군 [chang.gun] n
general secretary 총비서 [chong biso] n
get acquainted with 알게 되다 [a le toeda] v with ad fo
get down 내리다 [naerida] vi
give a performance 상연하다 [sang. give back 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] vt

glad 기쁨 [kibbun] a att fo; 반가 운 [pan.gaun] a att fo
gladly 반가이 [pan.gai] ad
glass 유리 [yuri] n
glasses 안경 [an.gyong] n
glitter 빛나리다 [ponjikgorida]
vi, vt
glorious 영광스러운 [yong.gwang suroun] a att fo
glory 영광 [yong.gwang] n
gloves 장갑 [chang.gap] n
go 가다 [kada] vi
go (by vehicles) 라고 가다 [tagoka da] v with con fo
go back 돌아가다 [toragada] vi, vt
go out 나가다 [nagada] vi, 외출 하다 [oechulhada] vi
go through the formalities 수속 하다 [susokada] vt
gray 회색의 [hoesaegui] n gen
great 위대한 [widaehan] a att fo
goat 가재한 [kodaehan] a att fo
great nature 대자연 [taejayon] n
greet 인사하다 [insahada] vi
greeting 인사 [insa] n
grocer’s shop 식료품점 [singnyo pumsangjum] n
grow 자라다 [charada] vi
grow old 늙다 [nukda] vi
gruel 죽 [chuk] n
guarantee 보증 [pajung] n in
guerrilla 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon]
guerrilla area 유격구 [yugyokgu] n
guest 손님 [sonnim] n
guide 안내원 [annae won] n
guide-book 안내서 [annaeso] n
gun 총 [chong] n

H

hard 된 [toen] a att fo, 굽은
[kudun] a att fo
harden 다지다 [tajida] vt
hasten 다그치다 [taguchida] vt
hat 모자 [moja] n
hate 증오하다 [chung ohada] vt
have 가지다 [kajida] vt vi
have a meal 식사하다 [sikshahada]
have one’s hair cut 리발하다
[ribalhada] vi
have sit 앉히다 [anchida] causat
he 그 [ku] pron
head of a delegation 대표단 단장
headache 머리아픔 [moriapum] n
health 건강 [kon·gang] n
healthy 건강한 [kon·ganghan] a
att fo
hear 들다 [tutda] vt 'um n
heart 심장 [simjang] n; 마음 [ma
heat 열 [yol] n
heavy 무거운 [mugoun] a att fo
heavy industry 중공업 [chung
gong·op] n [da] vt
help 방조 [pangjo] n; 돕다 [top
hen 달 [tak] n
here 여기에 [yogie] pron dat;여
기로 [yogiro] pron inst
hero 영웅 [yong·yong·han] a
att fo ,영웅적 [yong·yong·jok] n
high 높은 [nopun] a att fo ;높이

I 나 [na] pron, 내 [nae] pron,
저 [cho] pron, 체 [che] pron
ice 얼음 [ormum] n [i] n
ice cream 얼음보송이 [orumbosung.
Ice Rink 방상판 [pingsang·gwan] n
idea 사상 [sasang] n
ideological 사상적 [sasangjok] n
ideological revolution 사상혁명 [sa
sanghyongmyong] n
if 만약 [manyak] n, 만일 [manil]
н, 가령 [karyong] ad
illness 병 [pyong] n
imagination 상상 [sangsong] n

imagine 상상하다 [sangsonghada]
immediately 곧 [kot] ad 'vt
imperialism 제국주의 [Chegukjuui] n
imperialist 제국주의자 [Chegukju
uija] n
import 수입 [suip] n; 수입하다
[suipada] vt 'att fo
important 중요한 [chung·yohan] a
impression 인상 [insang] n
in the afternoon 오후에 [ohue] n
dat [(ojeone) n dat
in the beforenoon 오전에
in the evening 저녁에 [chonyoge]
inconvenient 불편한 [pulpyonhan] n
dat a att fo
independence 독립 [tongrip] n;
자주 [chaju] n
independent 자주적 [chajuk] n
individual 개인 [kaein] n
industrial state 공업국가 [kong.
opgukga] n
industrialization 공업화 [kong. op
industry 공업 [kong. op] n [wa] n
inform 전하다 [chonhada] vt, 통지
하다 [tongjihada] vt [kan] n
information office 물음판 [murum
inhabitants 추민 [chumin] n
injection 주사 [chusa] n
ink 잉크 [ingku] n
innovation 혁신 [hyoksin] n
inquiring 물어보기 [murobogi] n
insam wine 인삼술 [insamsul] n
inside 숙 [sok] n
inspection of passports 레진검열
[ryoggongomyol] n
insurance 보험 [pohom] n
intellectual 인테리 [interi] n
interest 흥미 [hungmi] n, 재미
[chaemi] n; 리익 [riik] n
international 국제적 [kukjejok] n

January 일월 [irwol] n
jaw 턱 [tok] n
joint 공동의 [kongdong.ui] n gen;
마다 [madi] n
jon 전 [chon] n (unit of Korean
coin)
journalist 기자 [kija] n
joy 기쁨 [kibbum] n

international Friendship Exhibi-
tion 국제친선전람관 [kukjechin
sonjollamgwon] n
international Post Office 국제우
전국 [kukjeupyon.guk] n
internationalism 국제주의 [kukje
juui] n
vi, vt interpret 통역하다 [tong.
yokada]
interpretation 통역 [tong.
yok] n
interpreter 통역원 [tong.yogwon] n
interval 휴식 [hyusik] n
interview 회견 [hoegyon] n, 접견
[chopgyon] n
introduce 소개하다 [sogae] n
introduction 소개 [sogae] n
investigate 조사하다 [chosahada]
vi, vt
invitation card 초대장 [chodaef
jiang] n
invite 초대하다 [chodaehada] vt
iodine tincture 요드링크 [yduting
ku] n
iron 쇠 [soe] n, 철 [chol] n;
다리다 [tarida] vt
irrigation 관개 [kwan.gae] n
it 그것 [kugot] n with pron

joyful 기쁨 [kibbun] n a att fo, 반
가운 [pan.gaun] n a att fo
joyfully 반가이 [pan.gai] ad
Juche Idea 주체사상 [chuchesa
July 천월 [chirwol] n [sang] n
June 류월 [ryuwol] n
just as 마치 [machi] ad
keep 간직하다 [kanjikada] vi
kerchief 머리수건 [morisugon] n
key 열쇠 [yolsoe] n
Kim Il Sung Stadium 김일성경기장 [Kim Il Sung gyonggi jang] n
kindergarten 유치원 [yuchiwon] n
kitchen 부엌 [puok] n
kitchen work 부엌일 [puong-nil] n
knee 무릎 [murup] n
knife 칼 [kal] n
know 알다 [alda] vt
knowledge 지식 [chisik] n
Korea 조선 [choson] n
Korean 조선사람 [chosonsaram] n;
조선말 [chosonmal] n, 조선어 [chosono] n; 조선의 [chosonui]

Korean-English dictionary 조-영 사전 [choyongsajon] n
Korean food 조선음식 [chosonumsik] n
Korean language 조선말 [chosonmal] n, 조선어 [chosono] n
Korean Peninsula 조선반도 [chosonbando] n, [inmin] n
Korean people 조선인민 [choson]
Korean People’s Army 조선인민군
[chosoninmin.gun] n
Korean revolution 조선혁명 [chosonhyongmyong] n
Korean Revolution Museum 조선 혁명박물관 [chosonhyongmyong bangmulgwan] n

labour 로동 [rodong] n, 로역 [ro ryok] n [ung] n
labour hero 로역영웅 [roryog-yong] n
labour safety 로동안전 [rodong-anjon] n
lake 호수 [hosu] n
landing 착륙 [changryuk] n
language 말 [mal] n, 언어 [onon] n
large 큰 [kun] a att fo, 데 [tae] n
large-scale 대규모 [taedaejok] n
last year 지난해 [chinanhae] n
late 늦은 [nujun] a att fo
Latin America 라틴아메리카 [ra

L

tinamerika] n
laugh 웃다 [utda] vi, vt
laundry 빨래집 [bballaejip] n, 세탁소 [setakso] n
law 법 [pop] n, 법령 [pomryong]
lay 놓다 [nupida] causat v
lead 인도하다 [indohada] vt, 령도하다 [ryongdo] n
leader 지도자 [chidoja] n, 항도자 [hyangdoja] n, 수령 [suryong] n
leadership 령도 [ryongdo] n
leading 지도 [chido] n
leaf 잎 [ip] n
learn 배우다 [paeuda] vt
learning 배우기 [paeugi] n
leave 떠나다 [ddonada] vi., vt. 출
발하다 [chulbalhada] vi., vt
lecture 강연 [kang.yon] n
left 왼쪽의 [oenjjogui] n gen
leg 다리 [tari] n
lemonade 레몬수 [remonsu] n
length 길이 [kiri] n
less 덜 [tol] ad
lesson 과 [kwa] n; 교훈 [kyohun]
lessons 수업 [suop] n
let eat 먹이다 [mogida] causat v
let fly 날리다 [nallida] causat v
let know 알리다 [allida] causat v
let see 보이다 [poida] causat v
letter 글자 [kulja] n, 글 [kul] n; 편지 [pyonji] n
letter box 우편함 [upyonham] n
letter of recall 소환장 [sohwan jang] n
level 수준 [sujun] n
library 도서관 [tosogwan] n
liberate 해방하다 [haebanghada] vt
liberation 해방 [haebang] n
lie 눕다 [nupda] vi
life 생활 [saenghwal] n; 생명 [saengmyong] n
light 빛 [pit] n; 가벼운 [kabyoun] a att fo [gong.op]n
light industry 경공업 [kyong.umak] n
light music 경음악 [kyong.umak] n
lighthouse 등대 [tungdae] n
lighting 번개 [pon.gae] n
like 좋아하다 [choahada] v with
con fo, 즐기다 [chulgida] vt
limb 팔다리 [paldari] n
limit 한계 [han.gye] n
limitlessly 한없이 [hanopsi] ad
line 방침 [pangchim] n
lip 입술 [ipsul] n
literature 문학 [munhak] n
little 작은 [chagun] a att fo
live 살아 [salda] vi, 거주하다
[kojuhada] vt, 지내다 [chinaeda] vi
lively 활발한 [pallahian] a att fo
load 집을 싣다 [chimul sitda] v
with n
lofty 고상한 [kosang.han] a att fo
London 런던 [london] n
long 긴 [kin] a att fo
long-distance bus 긴거리버스 [sioe bbosu] n
long life and good health 만수무강 [mansumugang] n [ma] n
long (spell of) rain 장마 [changs]
lose 지다 [chida] vi, 잃다 [ilt a] vi
lounge 휴게실 [hyugyesil] n
love 사랑 [sarang] n; 사랑하다 [saranghada] vt
low 낮은 [najun] a att fo
loyalty 충성 [chungsong] n
lunch 점심밥 [chomsimbap] n, 점
심식사 [chomsimsiksa] n, 점심
[chomsim] n
lung 폐 [pe] n
machine 기계 [kigye] n
magazine 잭지 [chapji] n
magnificent 평창한 [koengjghan] a att fo, 응장한 [ungjang han] a att fo
maize 강녕이 [kangnaeng.i] n
make 만들다 [mandulda] vt
make a revolution 혁명하다 [hyong myonghada] vi
make clean 깨끗이 하다 [ggaeggu si hada] v with ad [vi, vt
make friends with 사귀다 [sagwida]
male 남자 [namja] n
man 사람 [saram] n; 남자 [namja]
management board 관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] n
manager 지배인 [chibaein] n
mangnolia blossom 목란꽃 [mong ran, ggot] n
Mangyong Hill 만경봉 [man, gy ongbong] n
Mangyongdae 만경대 [mangyong Mansudae Art Theatre 만수대예술 극장 [mansudaeyesulgkjang] n
many 많은 [manun] a att fo 여러 [yoro] pre-n
map 지도 [chido] n
marathon 마라톤 [marason] n
marathon runner 마라톤 선수 [mara sonsonsu] n
March 삼월 [samwol] n
march 행진하다 [haengjinhad] vi
mark 점수 [chomsu] n
market 시장 [sijang] n
mass gymnastic display 집단체조 [chipdanchejo] n
mass meeting 군중대회 [kunjung
gyo] n
militant 전투적 [chontujok] n
militarism 군국주의[kun.gukjuui] n
militarist 군국주의자 [kun.gukjuui] n
military 군사적 [kunsajok] n
(military) operations 작전 [chakjon] n
milk 소젖 [sojot] n
million 백만 [paengman] num
mine 광산 [kwangsan] n
miner 광부 [kwangbu] n
mineral water 액수 [yaksu] n
minister 부상 [pujang] n
ministry 부 [pu] n
minute 분 [pun] n
mission 사명 [samyon] n
model 모범 [mobom] n
modern 현대적 [hyondaejok] n
modest 겸손한 [kyomsonhan] a
att fo
moment 순간 [sun.gan] n
Monday 홀요일 [woroyoil] n
money 돈 [ton] n
money exchange 돈바꾸기 [tonba

name 이름 [irum] n
napkin 상수전 [sangssugon] n
narrow 좁은 [chobun] a att fo
nation 민족 [minjok] n
national 민족적 [minjokjok] n
national defence 국방 [kukbang] n
national economy 인민경제 [inmingyongje] n
nationality 민족별 [minjokbyol] n
native place 고향 [kohyang] n

month 달 [tal] n
monument 기념비 [kinyombi] n
moral 도덕적 [dodokjok] n
morals 도덕 [todok] n
more 더 [to] ad, 더욱 [touk] ad
morning 아침 [achim] n
morning glow 아침노을 [achimno]
most 가장 [kajang] ad [ul] n
mother 어머니 [omoni] n
mottled 알락달락한 [allakkalla
kan] a att fo
mountain 산 [san] n
mouth 입 [ip] n
move 움직이다 [umjigida] vi. vt
movement 운동 [undong] n in
Mt. Kumgang 금강산 [kumgangsan]
Mt. Paekdu 백두산 [paekdusan] n
much 많이 [manai] ad
muscles 힘살 [himsal] n
museum 박물관 [pangmulgwang] n
musician 음악가 [umakga] n
music 음악 [umak] n
mutton 양고기 [yang.gogi] n
my 내 [nae] pron

naturally 자연히 [chayoni] ad:
ongdang [ungdang] ad
nature 자연 [chayon] n
near 가까이 [kaggai] ad
necessary 필요한 [piryohan] a
att fo
neck 목 [mok] n
necktie 넥타이 [nektai] n
nest 닭지 [tungji] n: 보급자리
[pogumjari] n
neurologist 신경과의사 [sin.gyonggwauisa] n
never 결코 [kyolko] ad
new 새로운 [saeroun] a att fo. 새 [sae] pre-n
new year 새해 [saehae] n
New Year's Day 설날 [sollal] n
news 소식 [sosik] n
newspaper 신문 [simmun] n
next 다음의 [taumui] n gen
next month 다음달 [raedal] n
next year 다음년 [myongnyon] n
night 밤 [pam] n
night train 밤차 [pamcha] n
nine 아홉 [ahop] num, 구 [ku] num
ninety 아홉 [ahun] num, 구십 [ku sip] num | num
ninth 아홉 번째 [ahop(bon)jjae]
noodle 국수 [kuksu] n

obligatory 의무적 [uimujok] n
observation study 전학 [kyonhak] n
obtain 관찰하다 [kwanchalhada]
occupation 직업 [chigop] n
o'clock 시 [si] n
October 시월 [siwol] n
oculist 안과의사 [an.gwauisa] n
of course 물론 [mullon] ad
off day 쉬는 날 [swinunnal] n
office worker 사무원 [samuwon]
officer 군관 [kun.gwan] n "[n
official 공식직 [kongsikjok] n
often 자주 [chaju] ad
oh! 오 [o] int, 아 [a] int
oil 기름 [kirum] n
one 하나 [hana] num. 한 [han] num. 일 [il] num | ad
only 다만 [taman] ad, 오직 [ojik]
north 북 [puk] n
north(ern) 북쪽의 [pukijjogui] n gen
nose 코 [ko] n
not 아니 [ani] ad, 안 [an] ad
now 각새 [kakso] n
notebook 학습장 [haksupjang] n
novelist 소설가 [sosolga] n
November 십일월 [sibirwol] n
now 이월 [ihe] n, 지금 [chigum] n
nuclear weapons 핵무기 [haeng mugi] n
nucleus free 비핵 [pihaek] n
number 수 [su] n, 번호 [ponho] n, 호 [ho] n
nurse 간호원 [kanhowon] n
nursery 랑야소 [tagaso] n

open 열다 [yolda] vt; 공개적 [kong.gaejok] n
opera 가극 [kaguk] n
opinion 의견 [uigyon] n
oppose 반대하다 [pandahada] vt
oppress 압박하다 [apbakada] vt
oppressed nation 피압박민족 [piep bakminjok] n
oppression 압박 [apbak] n, 억압
or 혹은 [hogun] ad
orange 골 [kyul] n
orchard 과수원 [kwasonwon] n
order 차례 [charye] n, 명령 [myong ryong] n, 실시 [chilso] n;
주문하다 [chumunhada] vt
ordinary 보통의 [potong.ui] n gen
organ 기관 [kigwan] n
organization 조직 [chojik] n
organize 조직하다 [chojikada] vt
overflow 넘치다 [nomyehada] vi
overfulfill 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyo

paediatrician 소아과의사 [soagwisa
page 페이지 [peji] n
painful 아픈 [apun] a att fo
pair 상 [ssang] n, 짝 [ijak] n,

paradise 망원 [ragwon] n

peace zone 평화지대 [pyonghwaje
peaceful 평화로운 [pyonghwaro

phone 번호 [pumoo] n

pencil 연필 [yonpil] n
pepper 후추가루 [huchuggaru] n
peanuts 버터 구수 [pumomo] n

peoples 방면 [pumu] n

people 인민 [inmin] n

People’s Army 인민군 [inmin gun]

people’s power 인민정권 [inmin
personal effects 개인용품 [kaein

photographing 사진작가 [sajinjik

physicist 물리학자 [muligya] n
photocopy 초안 [chonjuk]

pharmacy 약국 [yakguk] n
pharmacist 약사 [yaksu] n
philosophy 철학 [chelhak] n

picture 사진 [sajin] n

peace 정화 [pyonghwa]

peaceful 평화로운 [pyonghwaro

notebook 노트북 [nokubuk] n

November 양월 [yanggwo]

number 르진 번호 [ryonggwonbo

occasional 드물다 [dumudor]

occupational 아르바이트 [aro

occupy 점령 [joongyong]

occurrence [jukjeon] n

office 사무실 [soomisul] n

offer 제공 [jogae] vi

officer 수사관 [soosagwan]

official 공식 [gungso] a

officially 공식으로 [gungso

officials 공무원 [gungmoeun]

offshore 해외에 [hamyeho]

offspring 아들 [adal]

Ohio 오하이오 [ohao]

oil 오일 [oai] n

oilfield 오일필드 [oai

onion 양파 [yangpa] n

opinion 견해 [jenhak] n

operate 운전 [oontoen]

operational 예상 [yesang]

operation 수술 [sosul]

opportunity 기회 [jihoe] n

opposition 반대 [bandae]

opposing 반대하는 [bandaehan]

oppose 반대하다 [bandae]

opponent 반대자 [bandeot]

oral 연설 [yenseol]

ordinary 평범한 [pyeongbehan]

organized 건전한 [geonjehan]

organize 정리 [jeongri]

orientation 정렬 [jejongri]

oriental 동양식 [dongyang](

osmosis 오소미스 [oosomis]

outlet [ioul] n

overcoat 외투 [oetu] n

overthrow 탐도하다 [tadohada] vt

oyster 굴 [kul] n
physical culture 체육 [cheyuk] n
physician 내과의사 [naeggwauiisa] n
piano 피아노 [piano] n
pick (up) 집다 [chipda] vt
picture 그림 [kurim] n
picture book 그림책 [kurimchaek] n
picture postcard 그림엽서 [kurim yopso] n
piece 개 [kae] incomp n, 대 [tae] incomp n
pig 돼지 [twaeji] n
pile up 쌓다 [ssata] vt
pillow 베키 [pegae] n
pine 소나무 [sonamu] n
pine-nut tree 참나무 [channamu] n
ping-pong 런구 [takgu] n
place 자리 [chari] n, 곳 [kot] n
place of departure 떠난곳 [ddo nan got] n
plan 계획 [kyehoek] n
planet 행성 [haengsong] n
plant 식물 [singmul] n
plate 접시 [chopshi] n
platform 연단 [yondan] n, 플래트 홀 [pulfaetuhom] n
play 놀음 [norum] n; 놀다 [nolda] vi
play a person’s accompaniment 반주하다 [panjuhada] vi
pleasant 유쾌한 [yukwaehan] a
please 어서 [oso] ad, att fo
plunder 빼앗하다 [ryaktalhada] vt
poet 시인 [siin] n
point 점 [chom] n
policy 정책 [chongchaek] n / n
political power 정권 [chong gwon]
politics 정치 [chongchi] n
pork 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] n
porter 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun saram] n with att fo
portrait 초상화 [chosang hwa] n
possibility 가능성 [kanungsong] n
post 초 소 [choso] n, 우편 [upyon] n
post office 우편국 [upyon guk] n
postage 우편료금 [upyonryogum] n
postcard 우편엽서 [(upyon) yop so] n
Potonggang Hotel 보통강리관 [potong gang ryogwan] n
pound 파운드 [paundu] n
power 형 [him] n
precious 귀중한 [kwijunghan] a
att fo, 고귀한 [kogwihan] a
att fo, 귀여운 [kwiyoun] a
att fo
premier 총리 [chongri] n
preparation 준비 [chunbi] n
prepare 준비하다 [chunbihada] vi, vt
prescription 처방 [chobang] n
present 선물 [sonmul] n
president 주석 [chusok] n, 대통령 [taetongryong] n
pretty 맛 [ggae] ad
price 값 [kap] n
primary school 인민학교 [inmin hakgyo] n
principal 교장 [kyojang] n
prize 상 [sang] n
problem 문제 [munje] n
produce 생산하다 [saengsanhada] vi, vt
production 생산 [saengsan] n
programme 강령 [kangryong] n
progynoun시 [kongyonsunso] n
proletarian 프로레타리야 [puroreta ria] n

433
promise 약속하다 [yaksokada] vt
promote 추동하다 [chudonghada] vt
property 재산 [chaesan] n
propose 제의하다 [cheuihada] vt,
    제기하다 [chehigada] vt
prosper 번영하다 [ponyonghada] vi
prosperity 번영 [ponyong] n, 통
    성 [ryungsong] n
province 도 [to] n    [sa] n
publishing house 출판사 [chulpan
pulsate 고동치다 [kodongchida] vi
pulse 박박 [maebak] n
pupil 학생 [haksaeng] n
puppet 곰피 [koeroe] n
puppet regime 곰피정권 [koeroe
    jong.gwon] n
purchases 물건사기 [mulgonsagi] n

purpose 목적 [mogjok] n
put 놓다 [nota] vt
put on 입다 [ipda] vt, 신다 [sin
da] vt, 스다 [ssuda] vt, 기
da [ggida] vt
Pyongyang 평양 [pyongyang] n
Pyongyang Grand Theatre 평양대
    극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] n
Pyongyang Indoor Stadium 평양
    체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgw'an] n
Pyongyang International House
    of Culture 평양국제문화회관 [pyong
    yang.gukjeminhwahoegwan] n
Pyongyang Maternity Hospital 평
    양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] n
Pyongyang Metro 평양지하철도
    [pyongyangjihacholdo] n

quality 질 [chil] n
quantity 량 [ryang] n, 수량 [su
    ryang] n
question 문제 [munje] n

quick 빠른 [bbarun] a att fo
quickly 빨리 [bballi] ad
quiet 조용한 [choyonghan] a att
quite 아주 [aju] ad

razor 면도칼 [myondokal] n
reach 달다 [tata] vi
read 읽다 [ikda] vt
real 실제적 [siljejok] n, 현실적
    [hyonsiljok] n
realize 실현하다 [silhyonhada] vt
really 실로 [sillo] ad, 참으로
    hamuro] ad, 실제적으로 [silche
joguro] n inst
receipt 평수종 [ryongsujung] n
receiver 받는 사람 [pannun saram] n with att fo
recite 올다 [upda] vt
record 기록 [kirok] n
recover 낫다 [natda] vi, 회복하다 [hoebokada] vt
red 붉은 [pulgun] a att fo, 빨간 [bbalgan] a att fo
red flag 붉은기 [pulgun-gi] n
refuse 거절하다 [kojolhada] vt
regiment 연대 [ryondae] n
register 써넣다 [ssonota] n with con fo
registered letter 등기편지 [tung. gipyonji] n
relation 관계 [kwan-gye] n
relative 친척 [chinchok] n
reliable 믿음직한 [midumjikan] a
att fo
remain 남다 [namda] vi
remarkable 현저한 [hyonjohan] a
att fo
remorse 가책 [kachae] n
repair 교치다 [kochida] vt, 수리하다 [surihada] vt
repatriation 귀국 [kwiguk] n
repeat 반복하다 [panbokada] vt
reply telegram 답전 [tapjon] n
report 보고하다 [pogohada] vt
republic 공화국 [konghwaguk] n
request 부탁하다 [putakada] vt, 신청하다 [sinchonghada] vt
rest from one's work 쉬다 [swida] vi, vt
restaurant 식당 [sikdang] n
result 결과 [kyolgwa] n
return salute 답례 [tamrye] n
return visit 답례방문 [tamryebang mun] n
revisionism 수정주의 [sujongjuui] n
revolution 혁명 [hyongmyong] n
revolutionary 혁명가 [hyongmyong. ga] n, 혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] n
revolutionary ideas 혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] n
revolutionary museum 혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmulgwon] n
revolutionization 혁명화 [hyongmyonghwa] n
rice 쌀 [ssal] n
rice-cake 멸 [ddok] n
rice-field 논 [non] n
rice plant 벼 [pyo] n
rich 풍부한 [pungbuhan] a att fo
rich harvest 대풍 [taepung] n
right 권리 [kwolli] n, 옥은 [orun] a att fo, 지당한 [chidang han] a att fo
right side 오른쪽 [orunjok] n
ripen 익다 [ikda] vi, [da] vi
rise 오르다 [oruda] vi, 일다 [il]
river 강 [kang] n
road 길 [kil] n, [gi] n
roast duck 오리불고기 [oribulgc rouge 놀 [nom] n
role 역할 [yokal] n, [da] vt
roll 굴다 [kulda] vi, 말다 [mal]
room 방 [pang] n, 호실 [hosil] n
rose 장미꽃 [changmiggot] n
sad 손품 [sulpun] a att fo
salad 샐러드 [saengchae] n
salt 소금 [sogum] n
same 같은 [katun] a att fo
same time 동시 [tongsi] n
saw 토요일 [toyoil] n
sausage 소시지 [sundae] n
saw 토요일 [toyoil] n
say 말하다 [malhada] vi, vt, 말씀하다 [malssumhada] vt
scenery 경치 [kyongchi] n
school 학교 [hakgyo] n
schoolboy 남학생 [namhaksae] n
schoolgirl 여학생 [nyohaksae] n
scientist 과학자 [kwahakja] n
sea 바다 [pada] n
season 계절 [kjejol] n
seat 자리 [chari] n, 효 [ho] n
seat number 자리번호 [charibon]
secret camp 밀영 [miryong] n
secretary 사기 [sogi] n, 비서 [pisok] n
see 보다 [poda] vt, 구경하다 [kugyonghada] vt
see (a person) off 바래다 [parae]
devi runner 달리기선수 [talligisonsu] n
rules 규정 [kyujong] n
rural economy 농촌경제 [nongchonggyongri] n
rush 급진하다 [toljinhada] vi

September 구월 [kuwol] n ifo
serious 심각한 [simgakan] a att
serve 복무하다 [pongmuhada] vi
set revisit [anchida] causat v;
seven 일곱 [ilgop] num, 첫 [chil]
num [jjae] num
seventh 일곱 번째 [ilgop(bon)
seventy 일흔 [ilhun] num, 천십
sex 성 [song] n, [[chil] sip] num

S
sex distinction 성별 [songbyol] n
shallow 얇은 [yatun] a att fo
shave 깎다 [ggakda] vt
shaving 면도 [myondo] n [pron
she 그 녀자 [ku nyooja] n with
shear 깎다 [ggakda] vt
sheet 장 [chang] n
sherbet 과일청음료 [kwailchong
ryang.uhrmyo] n
shine 비치다 [pichida] vi, 빛나다
[pinnada] vi
ship 배 [pa] n
show 보여주다 [pojyoda] v with
con fo, 안내하다 [annaehada]
vt, 내주다 [tajyuda] vt
short 짧은 [jjalbun] a att fo
short time 짧간 [chamgan] n
shoulder 어깨 [oggae] n; 껴메다
[ddomeda] vt
shovel 삹 [sap] n
sign 간판 [kanpan] n; 수표하다
[supyo] n
sign one's name 서명하다 [so
myonghada] vi
signature 수표 [supyo] n
significance 의의 [uiui] n
silver 은 [un] n
singer 가수 [kasu] n 'bang' n
single room 1인용 방 [irinyong
sister 누이 [nui] n
sit 앉다 [anda] vi
six 여섯 [yosot] num, 묵[ryuk]num
sixth 여섯 번째 [yosot(bon)jjae] num
sixty 여순 [yesun] num, 육십
[ryuksip] num
skin 삐가죽 [salgajuk] n, 피부
[pibu] n
sky 하늘 [hanul] n
sleep 잠 [cham] n; 자다 [chada]
vi, 잠자리 [chamjada] vi,
주무시다 [chumusida] vi
sleeping carriage 철대차 [chimdae
cha] n
slogan 구호 [kuho] n
slowly 천천히 [chonchoni] ad
small 작은 [chagun] a att fo
small change 잔돈 [chandon] n
smoke 담배를 피우다 [tambaerul
piuda] v with n
snack 간식 [kanisikdang] n
snow 눈 [nun] n; 눈이 오다 [nuni
oda] phrase
snowstorm 눈보라 [nunbora] n
so 그려한 [kurohan] a con fo ; 그
렇게 [kuroke] a ad fo, 이렇게
[iroke] a ad fo, 이리 [iri] ad
so to speak 말하자면 [malhaja
myon] 'con fo
soap 비누 [pinu] n
social 사회의 [sahoeui] n gen
사회적 [sahoejok] n
socialism 사회주의 [sahoejuui] n
socialist 사회주의적 [sahoejuui
society 사회 [sahoe] n ljok] n
socks 짧은 양말 [jjalbun yangmal]
with att fo
soda water 탄산물 [tansanmul] n
soft 부드러운 [puduroun] a att fo
soft boiled egg 부드럽게 닭알 [pan
sukan talgal] n with att fo
soft sugar 사탕가루 [satang.garu] n
soil 더럽하다 [toropida] vt
soldier 병사 [pyongsa] n, 전사 [chonsa] n
sole 발바닥 [palbadak] n
solicitude 배려 [paeryo] n
solidarity 단결 [tan.gyol] n, 단단 [tangyool] n
song 노래 [norae] n
song 작가 [adul] n
soothing 미안한 [mianhan] a att fo
sound 소리 [sori] n; 울리다 [ul lida] vi
soup 국 [kuk] n
sour 신 [sin] a att fo
south 남(쪽) [nam(jjok)] n

southern 남쪽의 [namjigou] n gen
souvenir 기념품 [kinyompum] n
souvenir shop 선물점 [sonmul sangjom] n
sovereignty 주권 [chuggwon] n
soy 간장 [kanjang] n
spade 삽 [sap] n
spare 양자 [aggida] vt
speak 말하다 [malhada] vi, vt
special 특별한 [tukbyolhan] a att fo
spectator 관람자 [kwallamja] n
speech 연설 [yonsol] n
speed 속도 [sokdo] n
sphere 영역 [ryong.yok] n
spirit 정신 [chongsin] n
spoon 숟가락 [sutgarak] n
spread 퍼지다 [pojida] vi
spring 풍 [pom] n
spring breeze 봄바람 [pombaram] n
spring day 봄날 [pomnal] n
squad 분대 [pundae] n
stadium 경기장 [kyong.gijang] n
stage 단계 [tan.gye] n; 무대 [mu dae] n
stairs 계단 [kyedan] n, 층대 [chung dae] n
stamp 우표 [upyo] n
stand 서다 [soda] vi
stand-point 림장 [ripjang] n
star 별 [pyol] n
start 출발하다 [chulbalhada] vi, vt
state 국가 [kukga] n
statement 서명 [songmyong] n
statue 동상 [tongsang] n
stay 체류 [cheryu] n
steam 김 [kim] n, 증기 [chung gi] n
steel 강철 [kangchol] n
step in 들어서다 [turosoda] vi
step on 밟다 [papda] vi
steward 접대원 [chopdaewon] n
stewardess 여자접대원 [nyojap daewon] n
still 고요한 [koyohan] a att fo ; 조용히 [choyong.i] ad, 아직 [a jik] ad
stockings 긴양말 [kinyangmal] n
stomach 위 [wi] n
stop adj [sot] imp fo
story 이야기 [iyagi] n
straight 곧은 [kodon] a att fo ; 끝바로 [kotbaro] ad, 바로 [pa ro] ad
strawberry 딸기 [ddalgi] n
street 거리 [kori] n
streetcar 전차 [choncha] n
strike in 박다 [pakda] vt
strong 센 [sen] a att fo
struggle 투쟁 [tujaeng] n
student 대학생 [taehaksan] n
student at a university-level factory college 공장대학생 [kong jangdaehaksan] n
students and children’s palace 학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyon-gung, jon] n
Study House 학습당 [haksupdang] n
submit 줄하다 [kulhada] vi, 줄복하다 [kulbokada] vi
subway 지하철도 [chihaeholbo] n
succeed 성공하다 [song.gonghada]
success 성과 [song.gwa] n, vt
successor 계승자 [kyesungs, ja] n,
후계자 [hugyeja] n
such 이러한 [irohan] a att fo
suckling child 척먹이 [chonmogi]
suffer 당하다 [tanghada] vt in
sugar 사탕 [satang] n
suit (of clothes) 별 [pol] incomp n
sultry 무더운 [mudou] a att fo
summer 여름 [yorum] n
sun 해 [hae] n, 태양 [taeyang] n
Sunday 일요일 [iryoil] n
sunset 해돋이 [hae, doji] n
sunshine 해빛 [haetbit] n
supper 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] n,
저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] n
support 지지하다 [chijihada] vt
surgeon 외과의사 [oeggwa, wia] n
sweat 맘 [ddam] n
sweep 쓸다 [ssulda] vt
sweet 단 [tan] a att fo
sworn enemy 천천지원주 [cholchon jiwonssu] n, [chedo] n
system 체계 [chegeye] n, 제도

T

table d’hôte 정식 [chongsik] n
Taedong Gate 대동문 [taedong mun] n
Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs’ Cemetery 대성산혁명렬사릉 [taesongsanhyongmyongryol sanung] n
tailor shop 양복점 [yangbokjom] n
take 들다 [tulda] vt, 걸리다 [kolda] vi
take a photograph 사진을 찍다 [sajinul, jikida] v with n [vi
take a walk 산보하다 [sanbohada]
take in 빠우다 [taeuda] causat v
take into consideration 타산하다

tasanhada] vt
take off 떨다 [potda] vt
take-off 리륙 [riryuk] n
take part in 참가하다 [chamgahada] vi
take place 일어나다 [ironada] vi
take trouble 수고하다 [sugohada] vi
talk 담화 [tamhwa] n, 회담 [hoe- dam] n
target 목표 [mokpyo] n
task 과업 [kwaep] n, 임무 [immu] n
taste 맛 [mat] n, 맛보다 [matbo da] v with n
tax 세금 [segum] n
taxi 택시 [taeaksi] n
taxi stand [taeksijong ryuso] n

tea 차 [cha] n

teach 가르치다 [karuchida] vt
teacher 선생 [sonsaeng] n, 교원 [kyowon] n '교사' [kyosi] n
teaching 가르침 [karuchim] n, 
tear 1 눈물 [nunmul] n
tear 2 흘리다 [jjitida] vt

technical 기술의 [kisurui] n gen
technical revolution 기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong] n
technician 기술자 [kisulja] n
technique 기술 [kisul] n

telegram 전보 [chonbo] n
telegram form 전보용지 [chonbo yongji] n

telephone 전화 [chonhwae] n
telephone operator 교환수 [kyohwan su] n

television 텔레비전 [telebijyon] n
tell 말하다 [malhadia] vi, vt

temporary 일시적 [ilsijok] n
ten 열 [yol] num, 십 [sip] num

ten thousands 만 [man] num
tenth 열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae] num
territory 영토 [ryeongto] n, 강토 [kangto] n

textbook 교과서 [kyogwaso] n

thank 감사하다 [kamsarul durida] v with 1 fo

thankful 고마운 [komaun] a att that 그 [kuj] pron, 저 [cho] pron

thank that place 거기 [kogi] pron, 저기 [chogi] pron

10 the day after tomorrow 그 날이 [mo] the day before yesterday 그저께 [kujogge] n

the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, the DPRK 조선 민주주의인민공화국 [chosonmin jjuuuinmin gonghwaguk] n

the highest 최고의 [choegou] n gen

the Worker's Party of Korea 조 선로동당 [chosonrodongdang] n

theatre 극장 [kukjang] n

theory 리론 [riron] n

there 거기에 [kogie] pron dat,

there be 있다 [itda] vi, 계시다 [kyesida] vi

there is no … 없다 [opda] a

therefore 그러니가 [kuronigga] a

thesis 학제 [teje] n 1 con fo

they 그들 [kudul] pron

thick 굵은 [kulgun] a att fo, 밀 [paen] a att fo, 자욱한 [chau kan] a att fo

thigh 복부 [nopjokdari] n

thin 얇은 [yolbun] a att fo, 가는 [kanun] a att fo 1 vt

think 생각하다 [saeng.gakada] vi,

third 세 번째 [sebonjjae] num, 셋 째 [setjjae] num

thirty 서른 [sorun] num, 산십 [sam this 이 [i] pron 1 sip] num

this place 여기 [yogi] pron

this year 올해 [olhae] n

thought 생각 [saeng.gak] n

thousand 천 [chon] num


thunder 우뢰 [uroe] n

Thursday 목요일 [mogyoil] n

ticket 표 [pyo] n, 자표 [chapyo] n

ticket office 표판곳 [pyopanun got] n
tiger 뱀 (pom) n
till1 까지 [ggaji] aux end
till2 까다 [kalda] vt
time 시간 [sigan] n, 패 [ddae] n
times 패 [pae] n
timetable 시간표 [siganpyo] n
tinned goods 통출입 [tongjori] n
to one’s regret 유감스럽게 [yugam surope] a ad fo
toast 근병 [kunbbang] n; 축배 [chukbae] n
today 오늘 [onul] n
toe 발가락 [palgarak] n
together 함께 [hamgge] ad
toilet 위생실 [wisaengsil] n, 변소 [pyonso] n
tomato 도마토 [tomado] n
tomorrow 끝일 [raeil] n
tongue 혀 [hyo] n
too 또한 [ddohan] ad
tooth 이발 [ibbal] n
toothbrush 칫솔 [chisol] n
toothpaste 치약 [chiyak] n
totally 총채로 [chongchero] n inst
tourist 관광객 [kwan-gwang-gaek] n
tourist information office 관광안내소 [kwan-gwang-annaeso] n
tourist resort 관광지 [kwan-gwangji] n
tower 탑 [tap] n
Tower of Juche Idea 주체사상탑 [chuchesasangtap] n
Toy 놀이감 [noriggam] n
trade 무역 [muyok] n
trade agreement 무역협정 [muyok hyopjong] n
tradition 전통 [chontong] n
train 기차 [kich] n; 열차 [ryol
cha] n
traitor (to one’s country) 역국노 [maegungno] n
tram car 전차 [chencha] n
transit visa 통과사증 [tong-gwa saijung] n
translate 번역하다 [ponyokada] vt
translation 번역 [ponyok] n
translator 번역원 [ponyogwon] n
transport 수송 [susong] n
trail 선택 [ryohaeng] n
travel bureau 선택사 [ryohaengsa] n
travel bureau 선택사 [ryohaengsa] n
treat 취급하다 [chwigupada] vi.
vt; 치료하다 [chiryoada] vt
tree 나무 [namu] n
tremble 떨다 [ddolda] vi
trial 시련 [siryon] n; [cha]n
trickle 웅도수차 [mugwedojon
trousers 바지 [paji] n
truck 짐차 [chimcha] n
truly 정말 [chongmal] ad
trumpet 나팔 [napal] n
trunk 트렁크 [turongku] n
truth 진리 [chilli] n
Tuesday 화요일 [hwayo] n
turn 턱다 [tolda] vi
twelfth 열두 번째 [yoldu-bon] jjae] num
twelve 열두 [yoldul] num, 열두
[yoldu] num, 십이 [sibi] num
twenty 스물 [sumul] num, 이십 [si sip] num
twin-bedded room 2인용 방 [iin
yong bang] n
two 둘 [tul] num, 두 [tu] num,
이 [i] num
typewriter 타자기 [tajagi] n
umbrella 우산 [usan] n
unanimously 한결같이 [hangyolga
chi] ad
uncle 아저씨 [ajossi] n
unconditionally 무조건 [mujoggon]
underground (railway) 지하철도
[chihacholdo] n
understand 리해하다 [rihaehada]
understanding 리해 [rihae] n
underwear 숙내의 [songnaeui] n
undivided 유일적 [yuiljok] n
unification 통일 [tong'il] n
unify 통일하다 [tong'ilhada] vt
unite 통치다 [mungchida] vi

vacant 빈 [pin] a
vacillation 동요 [tong.yo] n
valley 골짜기 [koljjagi] n, 골
[kol] n
vegetables 남새 [namsae] n
very 대단히 [taedani] ad, 매우
[maeu] ad, 묻시 [mopsi] ad, 아니 [aju] ad
victory 승리 [sungri] n
view 견해 [kyonhae] n
village 마을 [maul] n, 농촌 [nong
chon] n

united front 통일전선 [tong'iljon
son] n
university 종합대학 [chonghapdae
university-level factory college
공장대학 [kon gjangdaehak] n
urgent telegram 긴급전보 [chigup
jonbo] n
US imperialism 미국주의 [mije
gukjuui] n
US imperialist 미국주의자 [mi
jegukjuuija] n
use 쓰다 [ssuda] vt, 사용하다
[sayonghada] vt, 리용하다 [ri
yonghada] vt

vinalon 비날론 [pinallon] n
vinegar 식초 [sikcho] n
violence 폭력 [pongryok] n
visa 사증 [sajjung]
visa number 사증번호 [sajjung
bonho] n
visit 방문 [pangmun] n, 참관 [cham
gwan] n; 방문하다 [pangmun
hada] vt, 참관하다 [cham
ghwanhada] vt
volleyball 배구 [paegu] n
voting rights 선거권 [songoggwon]

waist 허리 [hori] n
wait 기다리다 [kidarida] vt

waiter 접대원 [chopdaewon] n
waiting room 기다림간 [kidarim

442
kan] n
waitress [nyojaipdae won] n.
wake 깨우다 [ggaeuda] causat v
walk 걸다 [kotda] vi
wall 벽 [pyok] n
war 전쟁 [chonjaeng] n
warm 따뜻한 [ddaddutan] a att fo, 따사로운 [ddasaroun] a att fo
wash 씻다 [ssitda] vt
watch 시계 [sige] n
watch shop 시계샵 [sigeasang jom] n
water 물 [mul] n
water of river 강물 [kangmul] n
water-works 수도 [sudor] n
wave 물결 [mulgyol] n, 파도 [pado] n
we 우리 [uri] pron, 저희 [chohui] pron
weak 약한 [yakan] a att fo
weapon 무기 [mugi] n
weather 날씨 [nalssi] n
weave 짜다 [juda] vt
Wednesday 수요일 [suyoil] n
week 주 [chu] n
weekday 주일 [chuil] n, 요일 [yoi] n
weep 울다 [uld] vi
weight 무게 [muge] n
welcome 환영 [hwanyong] n; 환영하다 [hwanyonghada] vt
well1 잘 [chal] ad; 안녕한 [anyonghan] a att fo
well2 자 [cha] int
well-being 안녕 [annyong] n
west 서 [north] [so]jok] n

West Sea Barrage 서해갑문 [so haegammun] n
west(ern) 서쪽의 [sojogui] n gen
what 무엇 [muot] pron, 무슨 [musun] pron
what place 어디 [odij] pron
wheat 밀 [mil] n
wheat flour 밀가루 [milgaru] n
wheel 바퀴 [pakwi] n
when 언제 [onje] pron
where 어디에 [odje] pron dat
which 어느 [onu] pron
white 화이트 [hui] a att fo
who 누구 [nugu] pron
whole 전체 [chonche] n, 온 [on] pre-n
width 넓음 [nolbun] a att fo
widely 넓게 [nolge] a ad fo, 넓리 [nolli] ad, 환하게 [hwalijak] ad
wife 안한 [anjae] n
wine 이끼다 [igida] vt
windy 바람 [param] n
windy 감다 [kamda] vt
window 창문 [changmun] n
wine 술 [sul] n
winter 겨울 [kyoul] n
wipe 닦다 [takda] vt vi
wipe out 소멸하다 [somyolhada]
wise 현명한 [hyonmyonghan] a att fo, 술기운 [sulgiron] a att fo
with all one's strength 힘껏 [him ggot] ad
with pleasure 기꺼이 [kiggoi] ad
without 없이 [opsi] ad
wolf [sungnyang] n
woman [nyoja] n, 女性 [nyosong] n
woman musician [nyoja umakga] n
won 원 [won] n (unit of Korean currency)
word 말 [mal] n, 단어 [tano] n
work 일 [il] n, 작업 [chagop] n
work-team 작업반 [chagopban] n
worker 로동자 [rodongja] n

Workers' Party [rodong dang] n
working class 로동계급 [rodong gyegup] n
working people 근로자 [kulloja] n
workshop 작업장 [chikjang] n
world 세계 [seysye] n, 세상 [seysang] n
world-wide 세계적 [seysyejok] n
wrap 쌓다 [ssada] vt
wreath 화환 [hwahwan] n
write 쓰다 [ssuda] vt
writer 작가 [chakga] n

X

X-ray X선 [ekusuon] n, 엑스렌선 [rentugenson] n

Y

yard 마당 [madang] n
year 해 [hae] n, 년 [nyon] n
yellow 노란 [noran] a att fo, 뉴론 [numm] a att fo
yes 예 [ye] int, 응 [ung] int
yesterday 어제 [oje] n
you 너 [no] pron, 네 [ne] pron

지내 [chane] pron, 당신 [tangsin] n, 그대 [kuda]e pron
노회 [nohui] pron
young 젊은 [cholmun] a att fo, 어린 [orin] a att fo
your 너의 [noui] pron
youth 청년 [chongnyon] n

Z

zone 지역 [chidae] n
zoo 동물원 [tongmurwon] n
위대한 수령 김일성동지께서 탄생하시어 어린시절을
보내시고 혁명의 큰뜻을 품으신 만경대고향집

The old home at Mangyongdae where the great
leader Comrade Kim Il Sung was born and
spent his childhood, nursing his lofty
revolutionary aims
Arch of Triumph
International Friendship Exhibition
A Part of Pyongyang
만경대물놀이장 The Mangyongdae Pool

평양체육관 Pyongyang Indoor Stadium
빙상관 Ice Rink

Handball Gymnasium in Chongchun Street
Grand People’s Study House

People’s Palace of Culture
Lake Chon on Mt. Paekdu
대승산혁명렬사릉 Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery

평양산원 Pyongyang Maternity Hospital
천리마동상 Chollima Statue
Hwanggumbol Station, Pyongyang Metro

West Sea Barrage
공장의 조종실  Control Room of a Factory

만경대유희장  Mangyongdae Fun Fair
민속놀이 Folk Stunt
농장의 가을경이  Harvesting on a Farm

문화유적 Historical Remains
A View of Mt. Kumgang

A View of Mt. Myohyang
조선말 배우는 책
(영어)

집필 공익 현 심사 부교수 준박사 박종문 준박사 안송호 외 4명
편집 정경 선 사진 조동소, 정승영
장정 조동소 교정 박수련, 김지순
발행 외국문도출판사 인쇄소 평양종합인쇄공장
인쇄 1989년 5월 18일 발행 1989년 5월 29일

7-90813 1,500 부 값 3원 50전